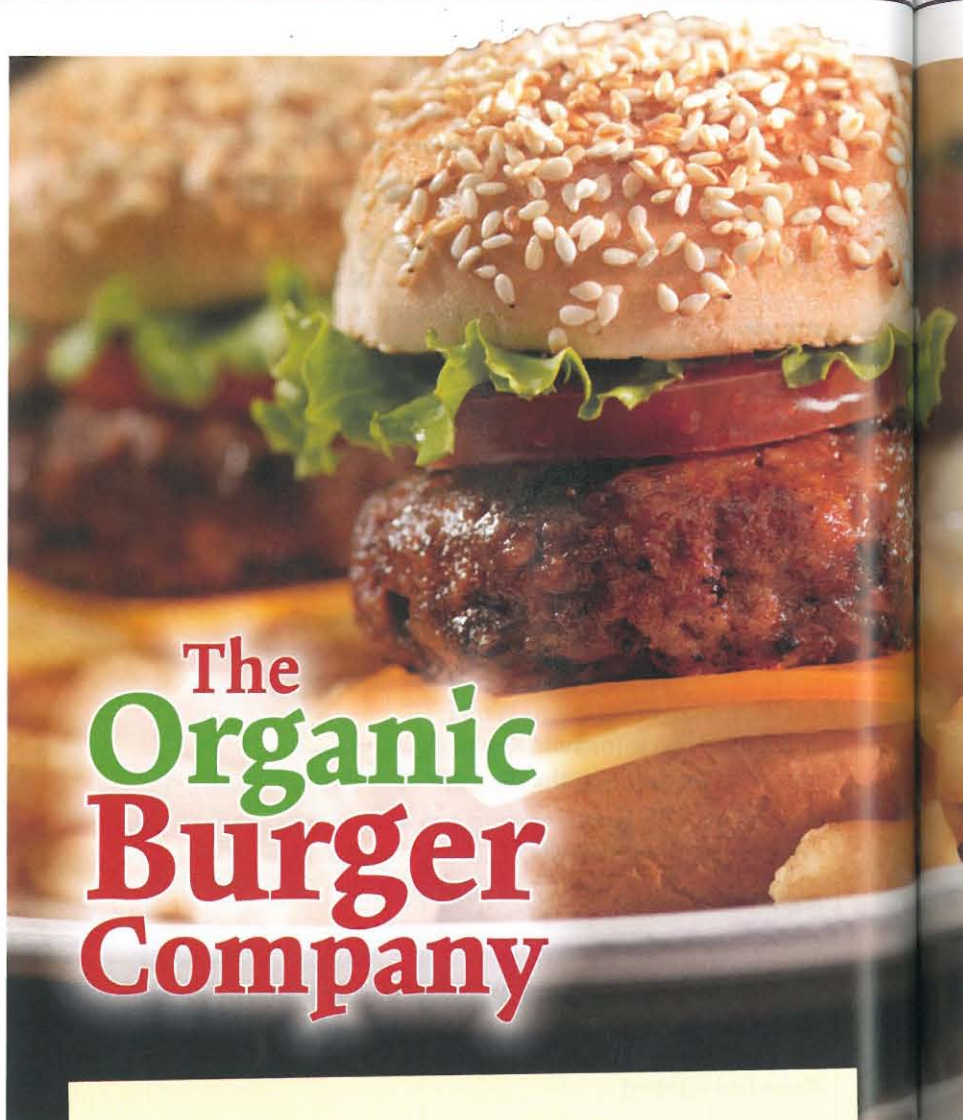




- 1 What do you understand by 'fast food'?  
What fast food outlets are popular in your country? What do you understand by 'organic food'? Do you ever buy it?
- 2 A company called the Organic Burger Company has commissioned a consumer survey to find out how they can best increase their market share. Read the report quickly and answer these questions.
  - 1 What does FAO stand for?
  - 2 Where was the survey done?
  - 3 Which group of people were surveyed?
  - 4 What are the conclusions?
- 3 Read the report again and complete it with the expressions below.
  - a In conclusion,
  - b The purpose of this report
  - c two main findings
  - d The reason behind this survey
  - e We recommend that
  - f The results
  - g We propose that
  - h were asked to say what they thought
  - i within the next six months
  - j We were asked to investigate
  - k not enough evidence



FAO: The Managing Director, Organic Burger Company

Title: **Survey into Potential Market Share Increase!**

Date: 30th November

### **Background and objectives**

(1) \_\_\_\_\_ is that there has recently been a drop in customers at traditional fast-food outlets such as McDonalds. The Organic Burger Company wants to fill the growing gap in the market.

(2) \_\_\_\_\_ is to survey consumer attitudes by doing preliminary research with the young people of Nottingham, a medium-sized English town.

(3) \_\_\_\_\_ what the customers would want from the experience of buying and eating a high-quality organic burger.





## Research and findings

They (4) \_\_\_\_\_ about the following statements:

- 1 I prefer to eat organic meat in my burger.  
SA A DK D SD
- 2 I prefer to have a restaurant interior that is tasteful and modern.  
SA A DK D SD
- 3 I prefer my food to be grown with respect for the environment.  
SA A DK D SD
- 4 I prefer all the other ingredients to be fresh and organic.  
SA A DK D SD
- 5 I am prepared to pay more than I pay now.  
SA A DK D SD

[SA = Strongly Agree

A = Agree

DK = Don't Know

D = Disagree

SD = Strongly Disagree]

(5) \_\_\_\_\_ are as follows:

- 1 46% agreed or strongly agreed
- 2 47% agreed or strongly agreed
- 3 77% agreed or strongly agreed
- 4 39% agreed or strongly agreed
- 5 22% agreed or strongly agreed

The (6) \_\_\_\_\_ are:

- 1 there is a growing preference for organic food.
- 2 there is (7) \_\_\_\_\_ that there is a large market yet.

## Summary and recommendations

(8) \_\_\_\_\_ we believe that our survey showed that:

- the tastes of young people in a typical western town are changing.
- demand exists for more stylish fast food and that this demand is growing.

(9) \_\_\_\_\_ the company loses no time in preparing for a push into all western markets.

## Action next

(10) \_\_\_\_\_ further research is now carried out, on a larger scale and in other countries. This should be completed (11) \_\_\_\_\_.

## WRITING A SURVEY AND A REPORT

4 You work for a firm of marketing consultants. Your client is a supermarket chain. Your brief is to find out if shoppers in your town would be prepared to buy more *Fairtrade* products in the local supermarket. *Fairtrade* products cost more, because they pay the producers in developing countries a better price for their products.

- Think of four or five statements like the ones used in the survey for the Organic Burger Company.

*I want to know where the things I buy come from.*

SA A DK D SD

- Ask at least 20 people, either in your class or outside your class.
  - Take data about age and gender (male/female).
  - Add up the statistics.
- 5 Write the report (about 250 words). Use expressions from exercise 3, and use the structure of the report as a model.







- 1 Do you send emails? If so, who to and when? What emails have you received or sent recently? Discuss with a partner then with the class.
- 2 Has email improved our lives? Brainstorm ideas on the pros and cons as a class. Divide the blackboard into two. Appoint two students to take notes, one for each column.

PROS (+)	CONS (-)

Discuss your results. On balance, which side wins? What's your opinion?

- 3 Read through the article quickly. How many of the points you made are mentioned? How many other points did you make?

- 4 Study the article more carefully.
  - 1 How is the topic introduced?
  - 2 What personal examples does the writer include throughout the article?
  - 3 For each point on the plus side underline the words and expressions used to connect the ideas.  
First of all email is easy.
  - 4 Compare the words and expressions used to connect the ideas on the minus side. Which are similar?
  - 5 How is the article concluded? How does the writer express his opinion?
- 5 Brainstorm the arguments for and against one of the topics below. Then write an introduction, the pros, the cons, and your conclusion (about 250 words).
  - Texting
  - Social networking
  - Facetime / Skype

## Subject: Email – has it really improved our lives?

Email is an important means of communication. However, in my opinion, like most things it has both advantages and disadvantages.

### + On the plus side:

- First of all, email is easy. All you need is the appropriate software on your computer. There are no stamps to stick and no trips to postboxes.
- A second point is that email is fast. No matter where you're sending your message, whether it's to the next street or to the other side of the planet, it takes only seconds to reach its destination. Nowadays, whenever I send regular mail (or snail mail as email users call it), I can't believe that it's actually going to take days to reach its destination. How primitive!
- Email is not only fast, it is also cheap. Unlike long distance telephone calls, you pay no more for messages sent from the US to London, Ohio, London, Ontario, or London, England.
- Also, email messages are easily stored. Because they're electronic, saving an email message you've received (and calling it back up again later) is a breeze.
- In addition to this, email is environmentally friendly because being electronic, it saves natural resources such as paper.
- Last but not least, email is practically universal. Even my great aunt in Galashiels, Scotland is using it these days.

### - On the minus side:

- Firstly, email is impersonal. Unlike when face to face or in telephone conversations, it's difficult to get across subtle meanings in email prose with no visual or voice clues.
- Secondly, it can be argued that email is in fact too easy. You can write a message in a few seconds and send it off with one click. And once sent, you can't get back a message that may have been written in a fit of irritation or anger.
- Another point is that email security is lax. As your email message makes its way to its destination, it has to pass through other, public systems. Anyone with the right technical know-how can intercept it without you knowing.
- Although, as stated above, it is an advantage that email messages are easily stored, this can also be a disadvantage. If you say nasty things about your boss in a message, a saved copy can come back to haunt you in the future.
- A final and very important point is that email can take over your life. Because it is so easy you start getting more and more correspondence, and you end up spending most of your day reading and responding to floods of messages.

Overall, however, to my mind the pros of email easily outweigh the cons. It has transformed the world of communication in largely beneficial ways, and alongside text messaging and social media, it is now a major way of keeping in touch.



- 1 What's your favourite town or city? Why do you like it? Which parts of it do you particularly like? Work with a partner and tell them about it.
- 2 Do the words in the box describe something positive, negative, or neutral?  
Do they refer to a person, a place, or food?  
Or more than one?

picturesque	intellectual	brand-new
snoring	a down-and-out	a haven
twisting	boutiques	mouth-watering
aromas	a magnet	flock (v)

- 3 Read the description of Greenwich Village in New York City. Which aspects of life in the Village do the pictures show?
- 4 Work with your partner and decide where you could divide the text into paragraphs. What is the purpose of each paragraph? Think of a heading for each one and compare them with others in the class.
- 5 The description is part fact and part opinion. Find examples of both.
- 6 Underline examples of relative clauses and participles.
- 7 Write a description of your favourite part of town (about 250 words). Use the paragraph plan to help you.

Paragraph 1: General / personal impressions

Paragraph 2: Its history

Paragraph 3: Its character

Paragraph 4: Conclusion and /or final anecdote

**I'm a  
Greenwich  
Villager  
and proud of it!**



I live in Greenwich Village, New York, which is in the 'downtown' (southern) part of Manhattan and includes Washington Square Park, New York University, and a maze of picturesque little streets. It's my favourite part of town. So why do I like it so much? It's an artistic and intellectual neighbourhood with people playing chess in the park, artists selling paintings on the sidewalk, and students discussing life in coffee shops. Life in 'the Village' is never dull. There's a surprise around every corner – maybe a brand new restaurant that wasn't there last week, a snoring down-and-out sleeping in the doorway, or a celebrity being pursued by paparazzi and fans. A sense of history pervades Greenwich Village. It was first inhabited by Native Americans, then Dutch settlers, and then the British, who in 1713 named it 'Greenwich' after a town in England. The Village really was a small, rural village until the 1800s, when people escaping outbreaks of disease began moving there. Ever since, the Village has been a haven for artists, writers, poets, and musicians. Many famous people have lived in Greenwich Village, including the writer Jack Kerouac, the singer Bob Dylan, and the actress Uma Thurman. The popular sitcom *Friends* was set here, and busloads of tourists looking for places mentioned in the show come here every weekend. The heart of the Village is an area of pretty, twisting streets west of Sixth Avenue, where there are endless theatres, used bookstores, coffee shops, trendy boutiques, and of course, restaurants. A large part of the Village experience has to do with food. The Village is packed with food shops and restaurants from every region of the world. Mouth-watering aromas are everywhere from first thing in the morning until late at night. The Village is a genuine 24/7 part of the town. Washington Square Park is like a magnet for young people. They flock from every corner of the world to sit on the benches or beside the fountain, talking, playing musical instruments, and celebrating the freedom of friendship and youth. My mother, who grew up in New York City, used to say that Times Square is for tourists, but the Village is the real New York.







- 1 You are going to give a talk to the class about one of your earliest memories. Write some notes under these headings:

How old were you? Where were you? Who were you with?  
What happened? Why do you remember it?

- 2 **T 9.12** Read and listen to someone talking about an early memory. Answer the questions.

- 1 How old was the speaker? What is her topic and name?
- 2 What was her sister not keen to do? Why?
- 3 What did the speaker do to get her sister's attention?
- 4 How did the weather affect both sisters?
- 5 Why was the speaker so very upset?
- 6 What wouldn't 'cut any ice' with the teacher?
- 7 How would you describe the relationship between the two sisters?

- 3 Now read the talk carefully and answer the questions.

- 1 There are four paragraphs. What is the aim of each one?
- 2 What background information is given by the speaker?
- 3 What are the main events of the particular memory?
- 4 How does the speaker conclude the tale?
- 5 Read aloud the first two paragraphs with a partner. Pay attention to pauses, stress and intonation.

### Preparing your talk

- 4 Write a talk to give your class using these guidelines and your notes.

- 1 Give the title:  
*The title of my talk is ...*
- 2 Introduce your topic:  
*I'd like to share a particular memory about ...*  
*One of my earliest memories was when...*  
*Today I want to talk about X because ...*
- 3 Give some background:  
*As you all probably know, I...*  
*I was just four years old ...*  
*What is more I ...*
- 4 Introduce your particular memory:  
*Anyway, one day it was raining and...*  
*What happened was this, ...*
- 5 Tell your story as it happened:  
*On that day ... After that I ... Finally...*
- 6 Conclude:  
*To this day I still remember ...*  
*Thank you all very much for listening to me.*  
*Are there any questions?*

- 5 Read aloud your talk to yourself. Think about pauses and the words you want to stress. Time yourself. Give your talk to the class. Answer any questions.

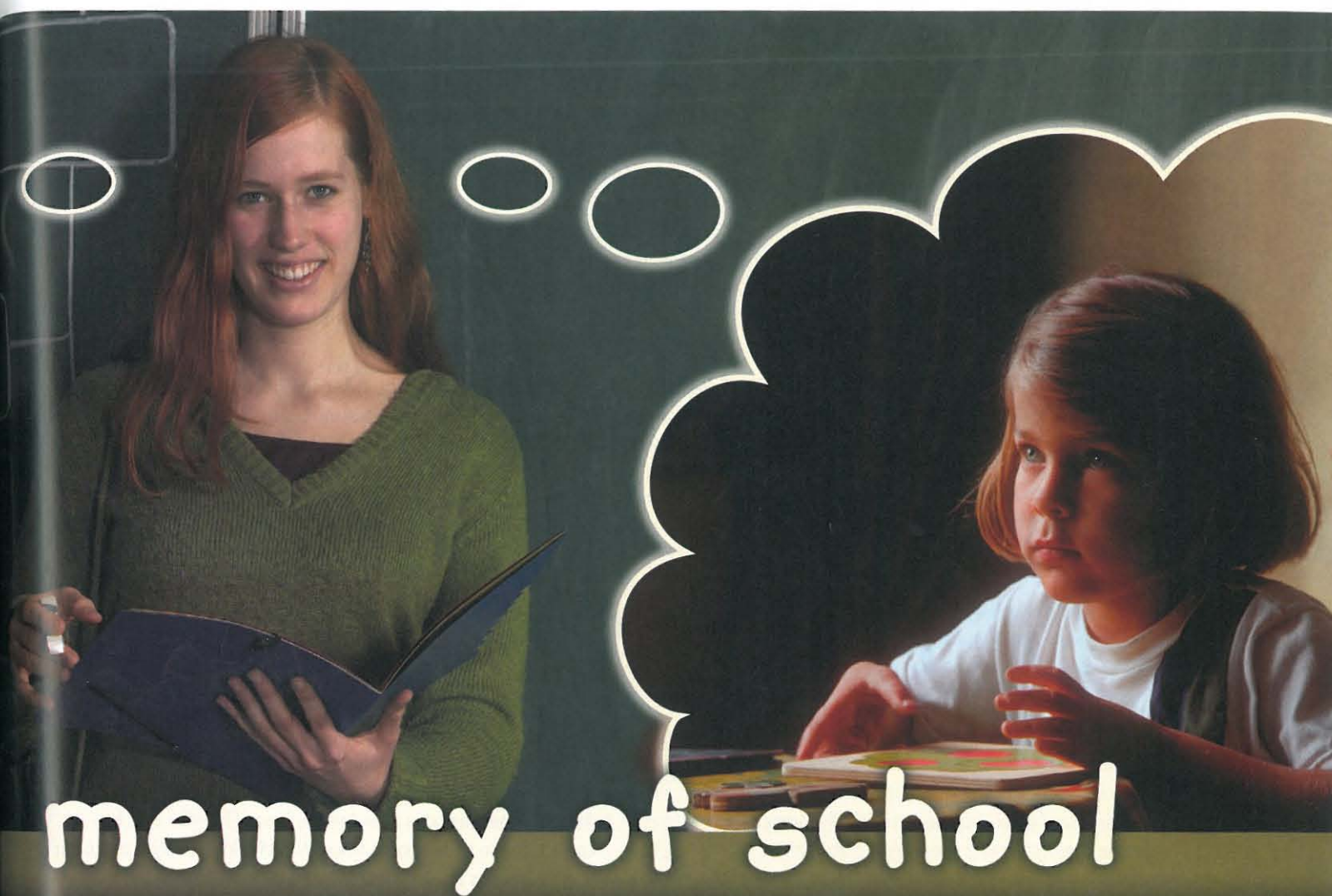


## An early

**Some of my clearest and earliest memories are of my first school, so I'd like to share a particular memory about that. It's a memory that still upsets me after all these years.**

I was four years old and had just started school. It was quite a long way from my house and there were no school buses, so I had to walk. My sister is eleven years older than me and her 'big' school was next to mine, so my mum sometimes asked her to take me to school. She was not keen to do this. She had no time for a small, irritating sister dragging along behind her. She liked to meet up with her 'cool' friends. What's more, because her school day started later than mine, she was happy to dawdle and chat with her friends and she refused to hurry to get me there on time. I was always an anxious child and I would tug at her sleeve and fret about being late. She'd just shake me off.





Anyway, one day was particularly bad and it has been burned in my brain ever since. It was pouring with rain and we splashed through puddles as we walked. My sister was moaning all the time about how the rain was ruining her hair because she was hoping to meet a certain boy on the way. On that day he didn't turn up and this put her in a very bad mood. I was wearing my new red 'welly' boots and they were really difficult to pull on and off. I was full of fear – Miss Marks, my teacher, would kill me if I was late again.

Finally we got there and my sister, suddenly energised, ran off, leaving me to cope with the wellies. The cloakroom was empty and I sat tearfully on the bench tugging at the wretched boots. I put on my indoor shoes and crept into the back of the classroom. I was very late and very scared.

The other kids were making mosaic pictures with lots of different-coloured bits of sticky paper. I had been so looking forward to doing this. Art was my best subject and I'd planned to do a beautiful portrait of my black and white cat. Miss Marks called across the room, 'Elizabeth, late again! Where have you been?' I hung my head. I knew telling tales about my rotten sister would cut no ice with Miss Marks. 'You'll just have to sit in the corner and do a jigsaw.' So I did, silently weeping and cursing my sister. I never did make a mosaic picture of my cat.

To this day my sister insists she can't remember anything about this. However, I believe it's the reason I have such a problem with lateness. I always arrive on time.





- 1 Who are some of the most influential people in the world today? And in the past? Share ideas as a class.
- 2 Compare the two texts about Michelangelo. Work with a partner and find differences in the way the same information is presented. Find examples of how emphasis is added by:
  - 1 Changes of word order.
  - 2 Changes of words.
  - 3 Sentences that begin with *It was ...* and *What ...*.
  - 4 The use of *this* to refer back.
 Which text sounds better? Why?
- 3 Rephrase these sentences in different ways to make them more emphatic.
  - 1 I love my grandfather's kind, wrinkly smile.  
*What I love about ...    The thing I love about ...*  
***What I love / The thing I love about my grandfather is his kind, wrinkly smile.***
  - 2 They don't understand the President's policies.  
*It's the President's policies ...    What they ...*
  - 3 The softness of Norah Jones' voice makes it special.  
*What makes ...    It's the ...*
  - 4 I admired Mother Teresa's courage.  
*What I admired about ...    It was ...*
  - 5 The way Pele could head a football was amazing.  
*What was ...    What amazed me ...*
- 4 Research the career of someone you consider influential – a sports person, artist, singer, actor, writer, or business person. Using structures for adding emphasis, write (about 250 words) about:
  - their early life
  - why he/she is/was a person of influence
  - how their career grew
  - the high points of their professional life

# MICHELANGELO

## TEXT A

- 1 Michelangelo had a great influence on the world of art. He was a sculptor, an architect, a painter, and a poet.
- 2 He was born near Arezzo, but he considered Florence to be his home town. He loved the city's art, architecture, and culture.
- 3 He concentrated on sculpture initially. He began to carve a figure of David from a huge block of marble in 1501. He finished it in 1504, when he was 29.
- 4 Pope Julius II asked him to paint the ceiling of the Sistine Chapel later. He worked at this every day for four years from 1508 till 1512. He lay on his back at the top of high scaffolding.
- 5 He designed many buildings. His greatest achievement as an architect was his work at St Peter's Basilica. Its revolutionary design is difficult to appreciate nowadays.
- 6 Michelangelo belongs to a small group of artists such as Shakespeare and Beethoven, who have been able to express humanity's deepest experiences through their work.

## TEXT B

- 1 Michelangelo, sculptor, architect, painter, and poet, had a tremendous influence on the world of art.
- 2 Although he was born near Arezzo, it was Florence that he considered to be his home town. What he loved above all about the city was its art, architecture, and culture.
- 3 Initially, he concentrated on sculpture. In 1501 he began to carve a figure of David from a huge block of marble. This he finished in 1504, when he was 29.
- 4 Later, he was asked by Pope Julius II to paint the ceiling of the Sistine Chapel. To do this, every day for four years, from 1508 till 1512, he worked lying on his back at the top of high scaffolding.
- 5 He designed many buildings, but it was his work at St Peter's Basilica that was his greatest achievement as an architect. What is difficult to appreciate nowadays is its revolutionary design.
- 6 There is a small group of artists such as Shakespeare and Beethoven, who, through their work, have been able to express the deepest experiences of humanity. Michelangelo belongs to this group.





- 1 Think of something that you looked forward to for a long time that finally happened.
  - What was the occasion or event? Why did you want it so much?
  - Did you have to make preparations for it? If so, what were they?
  - What actually happened?
  - Did it live up to your expectations or not?

Write some notes and then tell your partner about it.

- 2 Look at the picture and read the main points of Larry's story. Use them to say what happened.

Larry's dream to fly aeroplanes  
bought twenty balloons  
a garden chair  
packed a few sandwiches and an air pistol  
cut the rope  
floated around  
the winds were blowing  
a British Airways pilot at 3,500 metres  
a helicopter  
a TV reporter

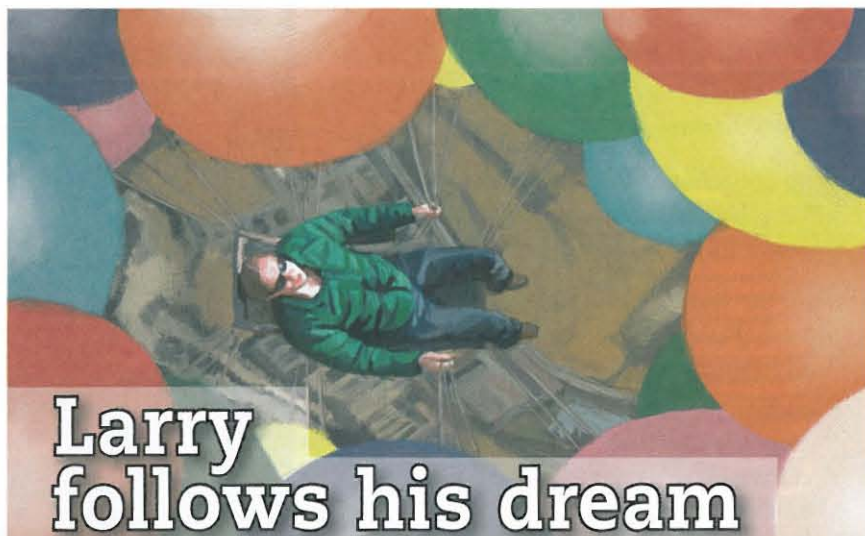
- 3 Read the full story and compare it with yours. Match these five headings with the correct paragraphs.

- ☐ Serious problems
- ☐ Preparing for take-off
- ☐ Down to earth with a bump
- ☐ Larry and his dream
- ☐ Flying high

- 4 Read the story again and complete it with a correct linking word or expression from the box.

first of all	Finally	Eventually
However	Next	All day long
Then, one day	until	By this time
As soon as	Immediately	Unfortunately
in order to	so	because
Fortunately, just at that moment		

- 5 Use your notes from exercise 1 and write your story (about 250 words).
- 6 Read each other's stories and ask and answer questions about them.



- 1 **Larry Walters** was a truck driver, but his lifetime dream was to fly aeroplanes. (1) \_\_\_\_\_ he would watch the fighter jets criss-crossing the skies above his back garden and dream about the magic of flying. (2) \_\_\_\_\_, he had an idea. He drove to the nearest hardware shop and bought twenty large balloons and five tanks of helium. (3) \_\_\_\_\_, they were not normal brightly-coloured party balloons but heavy one-metre weather balloons used by meteorologists.
- 2 Back in his garden, (4) \_\_\_\_\_, Larry used a rope to tie a chair to his car door. (5) \_\_\_\_\_ he tied the balloons to the chair and inflated them, one by one. (6) \_\_\_\_\_, he packed a few sandwiches and a bottle of Coke, loaded an air-pistol, and climbed on to the chair. His plan was to float up lazily into the sky to about sixty metres, and then to pop a few balloons (7) \_\_\_\_\_ descend to earth again.
- 3 His preparations complete, Larry cut the rope. (8) \_\_\_\_\_, he didn't float up, he shot up, as if he had been fired from a cannon! Not to sixty metres, but up and up and up, (9) \_\_\_\_\_ about 3,500 metres. If he had popped any balloons at this height, he would have plummeted to earth, (10) \_\_\_\_\_ he just had to stay up there, floating around and wondering what to do.
- 4 (11) \_\_\_\_\_, night was falling and things were getting serious. Winds were blowing Larry out to sea. (12) \_\_\_\_\_ an amazed British Airways pilot spotted him and radioed the airport saying he'd just seen a man with a gun, sitting on a garden chair at 3,500 metres. (13) \_\_\_\_\_ a helicopter was sent to rescue him, but it wasn't easy (14) \_\_\_\_\_ the wind from their rotor blades kept pushing the home-made airship further away. (15) \_\_\_\_\_, they managed to drop a line down from above, and pulled him to safety.
- 5 (16) \_\_\_\_\_ he was on the ground he was arrested. A TV reporter shouted, 'Hey mate, why did you do it?' Larry looked him in the eye, and said, 'A man's got to follow his dreams'.





- 1 Work with a partner. Describe a building you like in your town and one that you don't like. Do you know who the architects were?
- 2 Read texts A and B about Zaha Hadid, a famous Iraqi-born architect. Which text do you think has the best style? Why?
- 3 Read the texts again. In each paragraph, identify the differences in style. Find examples of:
  - paraphrasing using more interesting vocabulary, especially adjectives
  - changes in the order information is presented
  - avoiding repetition
  - joining sentences using:
    - a) conjunctions of time, contrast, and purpose
    - b) participle clauses
- 4 Join these sentences using the words in brackets.
  - 1 I got my degree. I went to work in London. (*after*) (*as soon as*)
  - 2 I'm an architect. I notice a lot about the buildings around me. (*Being*)
  - 3 I went to work yesterday. I wasn't feeling well. (*although*) (*despite*) (*nevertheless*)
  - 4 I've bought a flat nearer my office. I spend less time commuting. (*so that*) (*in order to*)
  - 5 I came to London. I made a lot of friends. (*since*)
  - 6 Sometimes I work in Rome. I like to visit the Coliseum. (*whenever*)
  - 7 I've done some Italian classes. I can speak Italian with my colleagues now. (*Having*)
  - 8 The Shard was completed in 2012. It's the tallest building in London. (*Completed*)
- 5 Research a famous building in the world, ancient or modern. Write about the architect or the building. Write notes and use them to make a cohesive and interesting text.



**Zaha Hadid**

***an architect for our time* 1950–**

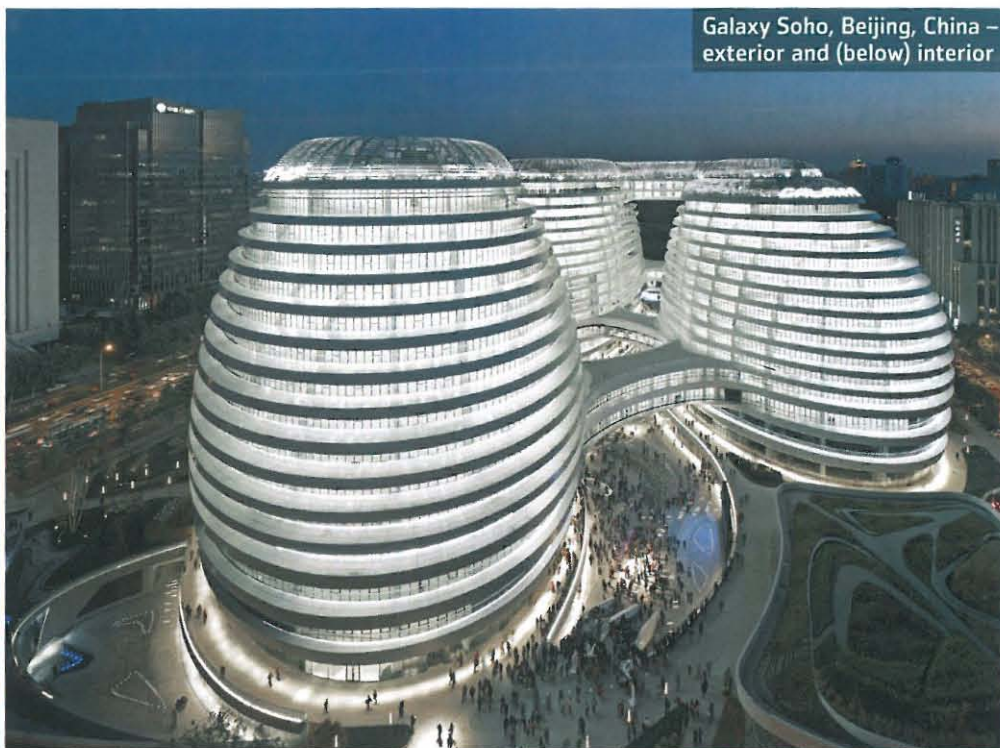
**A**

- a Zaha Hadid is a very important modern architect. She was the first woman architect to win the important Pritzker Prize for Architecture.
- b Hadid was born in Baghdad, Iraq, in 1950. She lives in London now. She came to London as a student in 1972. She has a design practice in London.
- c She studied mathematics at the University of Beirut. She graduated and she moved to London. She studied architecture. She graduated in 1977. Then she worked in Rotterdam and London.
- d Hadid became successful in 1994. She won a competition to design Cardiff Bay Opera House. The people said that the building was too modern. The building was never built.
- e In 2003 Hadid designed the Centre for Contemporary Art in Cincinnati. It was her first big achievement. She has designed buildings all over the world. She designed an Opera House in Dubai. She also designed the Aquatics Centre for the 2012 Olympics in London.
- f Zaha Hadid is a good modern architect. She designs a lot of nice buildings. Now she is designing her first building in Iraq, where she was born. It is the Central Bank of Iraq. She is also going to work on the main stadium for the Tokyo Olympics in 2020. She won the design competition for it. The competition was between 46 architectural firms.





Glasgow Riverside  
Museum of Transport



Galaxy Soho, Beijing, China –  
exterior and (below) interior

## B

- a Zaha Hadid, a hugely important figure in the world of modern architecture, is the first woman to win the prestigious Pritzker Prize.
- b Born in Baghdad, Iraq, in 1950, Hadid came to London as a student in 1972. The city is now her home and where she has established her design practice.
- c Having first graduated in mathematics from the University of Beirut, she moved to London to study architecture. Completing her degree in 1977, she worked in architectural practices in Rotterdam and London.
- d However, it wasn't until 1994 that her career really took off. She won a competition to design the Cardiff Bay Opera House, but her design was considered too modern and daring for the town. It was never built.
- e Her first major achievement was the Centre for Contemporary Art in Cincinnati in 2003. She has since designed buildings all over the world, including an Opera House in Dubai and the Aquatics Centre for the 2012 Olympics in London.
- f As one of the most exciting modern architects, Zaha Hadid continues to design extraordinary buildings. At the moment she is designing The Central Bank of Iraq, which is her first project in her native country. She will also be working on the main stadium for the 2020 Tokyo Olympics, having won the design competition between 46 architectural firms.





# Tapescripts



## UNIT 1

### T 1.1 See p6

### T 1.2

- 1 Where is Tyler spending the year?  
In London.
- 2 Is this his first trip abroad?  
No, it isn't. He's been abroad once before. Last year he went to Mexico.
- 3 Where does Dave live?  
In north London.
- 4 How long is Tyler going to stay with Dave?  
A few days.
- 5 Why did the guy say 'cheers' to Tyler?  
Because he had let him pass.
- 6 Does he like his host family?  
Yes, he does. He thinks they're very nice.
- 7 What are they doing on Sunday?  
They're visiting Shakespeare's hometown.

### T 1.3

- 1 How long has Teresa been in Africa?  
Since last September.
- 2 What time does she start work?  
Early, at seven o'clock.
- 3 What has she just bought?  
A 'piki-piki'. It's a little motorcycle.
- 4 Where did she go last Sunday?  
To a really awesome beach.
- 5 What's she going to take home?  
Her collection of shells.
- 6 How many shells has she collected already?  
Hundreds.
- 7 What did they do at the beach?  
They barbecued fish and swam until the sun went down.
- 8 What's she sending to her parents?  
She's sending some photos.

### T 1.4

- 1 A Are you being served, sir?  
B Just looking, thank you.
- 2 I've heard that she's been seeing a lot of Patrick recently.
- 3 I'll be seeing Bill this afternoon – I'll tell him the good news then.
- 4 Apparently, he was overtaking on a bend at 70 miles per hour when they stopped him.
- 5 I hadn't seen her since she was a little girl, and she'd changed beyond all recognition.
- 6 Nobody will listen to him. He's the kind of guy who isn't believed by anyone.
- 7 I haven't been told yet if I've got it. I'll be told in writing sometime next week.
- 8 He's been working such long hours recently. He never sees the children.

### T 1.5

- 1 A At weekends, I often don't bother getting up 'til lunchtime.  
B Me neither! Why bother if you don't have to?
- 2 A My parents have never had a cross word in all their married lives.  
B Really? Mine are at it all the time.
- 3 A I don't think I'll ever master this remote control.  
B Well, don't ask me. I can't even find the on/off button.

- 4 A I was saying to a friend just the other day that I hadn't seen you for ages.  
B I know. How long has it been?
- 5 A I hate Mondays because nothing ever goes right on a Monday.  
B Just Mondays, eh? Aren't you the lucky one!
- 6 A I'd just arrived home last night when I realised I'd left my briefcase on the bus.  
B Well, you won't see that again.
- 7 A I was just getting ready to go out this morning when my grandmother rang for a chat. It's so frustrating.  
B I know and you feel really bad if you say it's not a good time.
- 8 A I've been told that our teacher wears purple pyjamas in bed!  
B Who on earth told you that?
- 9 A In my very first English lesson I was taught to introduce myself and say 'hello'.  
B I was taught to say 'The cat runs after the mouse', and stuff like that – useful, eh?
- 10 A The reason I'm learning English is because it's spoken all over the world.  
B True. But isn't Chinese spoken by more people?

### T 1.6

- 1 A Heard about Jane and John? Thought not.  
B I always thought they got on really well.  
A Apparently not. John's been seeing his ex-girlfriend.
- 2 A Leaving already? What's wrong?  
B I just have a headache, that's all.
- 3 A Failed again? How many times is that?  
B OK, OK. There's no need to rub it in! They say the best drivers fail three times.
- 4 A Sorry I'm late. Been waiting long?  
B No, I've just arrived myself. Got caught in traffic.
- 5 A Doing anything interesting this weekend?  
B Yeah, if you call housework interesting. I've just got to tidy my flat this weekend.
- 6 A Like the car! When did you get it?  
B We've had it a while actually. Second hand, you know.
- 7 A Bye Jo! See you later.  
B Yeah. I'll be round about eight!
- 8 A Just coming! Hang on!  
B Get a move on or we'll go without you.
- 9 A Want a lift? Hop in.  
B Great. Can you drop me in the centre?
- 10 A Seen Jim lately?  
B No, I haven't. I wonder what he's up to these days.

### T 1.7 Things I miss from home

#### Margaret

There's only one thing I really miss about where I come from and that's the sea. Er-, I'm originally from Yorkshire and, although I came to live here in Germany 30 years ago, I still miss the north-east coast of England. Erm- there's just something about the sea. Where I live now, there's a river and I often go down to it ... there's some nice walks along the banks. It's lovely but it's not really the same. The thing about the sea is that it changes all the time, not just every day but every time of day. Every wave that comes is different from the last one. In my hometown when the tide comes in, the water comes right up the road and then when it goes out, there's just miles and miles of sand. It

can take an age to walk to the sea. It's a source of amazement to me every time I see it.

#### Mairie

Er, the thing I miss about Scotland is probably the weather, believe it or not. Up there, the air is quite crisp and clear and the temperature is cooler. I find where I live now ... erm ... in Madrid, it gets so hot and humid in summer and a little bit sticky as well.

#### Rob

Alright, well, I've been living in France for the last 20 years and I suppose the things I miss most about Britain, my original home, is ... well ... first of all the obvious things, like every Brit living abroad, ... er ... I miss some typical English foods – for me that means curry, digestive biscuits, brown sauce, porridge, and of course good English bitter beer.

Erm, what else do I miss? Socially, I think I miss the way that people go out together in Britain. I miss the chat, the banter, I miss meeting friend in pubs. Erm, or the way that people talk to each other at football matches. I miss ... I miss that sparky British humour on a day-to-day basis.

On a ... on perhaps a more serious note, I miss having a vote. In Britain, you lose your vote once you've been out of the country for more than 15 years and because I haven't taken French nationality, I don't have a national vote here. So, I don't get to vote anywhere these days. I guess that's one of the things I miss most.

#### Joe

Er, so things that I miss about the UK, er ... the first would be bread. The bread here in the States seems to stay too fresh for a long time. And it doesn't actually make particularly good toast. And being British, toast ... erm ... is an important thing.

And ... er ... another important thing is ... erm ... related to work. I've found working in the US surprisingly different from the UK. Er ... In the US, it's very important to be very upbeat and positive about what you can do. Which, you know, is true to a certain extent in the UK, but I think in the UK it's kind of OK to be good at what you do, and just get on with it. Erm, over here, you're kind of expected to be a salesman, you know, like you should be selling yourself and your abilities. I guess in a way the Brits are just a bit more modest at work. Er, and I kind of like that modesty. I'm not particularly good at selling myself, I just like to get on with my job, and I don't feel the need to tell everyone how good I am. But that's kind of the way things are over here.

#### Tetyana and Sem

T Erm ... one thing I miss, living in England, is the food from back home, all the seasonal products and the enjoyment of going to the farmers' market to buy fresh cottage cheese from a lady that your grandma has known since you were little.

S That's right. Apricots, melons, tomatoes just don't taste right in this country!

T Yeah, and it seems that the most elusive fruit here is a ripe watermelon. I keep buying them, but every single one is a disappointment. I'll always miss the watermelons we used to get from the south of Ukraine. It



- S Hmm, that's right. So, ... erm, enough about food. What I miss most is the language. There is nothing quite like walking along the street and feeling like you are part of something bigger than yourself ... hearing your own language. I always feel a bit ... erm ... small when I'm abroad and all I hear is a foreign language. It's like I'm a bit insecure and I'm ... I'm missing something. It's hard to explain.
- T Mmm, I know what you mean. Also I find it hard to be away from home on national holidays. Some of our traditions are just impossible to recreate. Er, you just don't get the same feeling of people coming together to celebrate in the streets.

### Shaun

I live with my dad on the east coast but, erm ... I visit my mom in Florida lots of times a year. The one thing I miss is my drums. You see, I'm in a rock band, but I can't travel with my kit, so I have to leave it at home. Dude, it's like torture. I can't wait to get home to Dad's, and sit at my drums, and get playing again. My mom says I miss them more than I miss her.

### T 1.8 See pp10-11

### T 1.9

- 1 A Do you think you could possibly water my houseplants for me? I'm away on business for two weeks.  
B No problem. I'd be glad to. I'll keep an eye on your whole flat if you like.  
A Oh, that would be great.  
B Don't worry, I know how house-proud you are. I'll make sure everything stays clean and tidy.  
A I'll do the same for you any time, you know.  
B Thanks.
- 2 A Julie, have you heard? Anna's just been made Managing Director of the UK branch of her firm, so she's coming back from the States!  
B Oh, that's great news! Let's give her a spectacular homecoming party when she gets back. Hmmm. She's certainly the career girl of the family.  
A Doing really well, isn't she?  
B I know, and I'm happy for her. Me? I'm just a housewife. Four kids, homemade cakes, and home-grown vegetables!  
A And how are my wonderful grandchildren?  
3 A We're having a house-warming party on the 12th. Can you come?  
B Yes, you bet. We'd love to! But I didn't know you'd moved.  
A Yeah, two weeks ago. It's much bigger than the old one. Huge kitchen and three big bedrooms.  
B Sounds great!  
A Yeah. Mind you, there's much more housework to do!  
B That's a drag!
- 4 A Mum? (sob) Mum, I want to come home. I don't like it here.  
B Oh, Max. Come on now. You were so looking forward to going to camp.  
A But ... but Mum, I hate it here. Why won't you and Dad come and get me?  
B Max, we can't. I never thought you'd be so homesick, and you'll be home in two days.  
A TWO MORE DAYS! Oh, no!  
5 A Hey, you going to Carly's on Saturday?  
B I dunno.  
A It's an open house. It'll be great.  
B Cool. Where are her parents then?

- A Carly says they're visiting her grandma - she's sick and housebound so they have to help.

B OK. Count me in. I'll be there.

### T 1.10

- 1 I'm going away for two weeks. Do you think you could possibly water my house plants for me?
- 2 Don't worry, I know how house-proud you are. I'll make sure your flat stays clean and tidy.
- 3 Let's give her a spectacular homecoming party when she gets back from New York.
- 4 Me? I'm just a housewife. Four kids, homemade cakes, and home-grown vegetables!
- 5 We're having a house-warming party on the 12th. Can you come? I'll give you our new address.
- 6 The drag is, with it being much bigger, there's much more housework to do!
- 7 Poor boy. I never thought he'd feel so homesick.
- 8 Her grandma's sick and housebound, so they have to go and help.

### T 1.11

- 1 A Great to see you! Come on in.  
B I was just passing and I thought I'd drop in.
- 2 A Excuse me, don't I know you from somewhere?  
B No, I don't think so.
- 3 A What d'you mean you're not coming?  
B Well, I just don't feel up to going out tonight.
- 4 A I'll have the chocolate mousse. What about you?  
B Actually, I don't think I'll bother with dessert.
- 5 A My flatmate can't make it to your party.  
B Really! That's a shame. I was hoping to meet her.
- 6 A How come you're not having a holiday this year?  
B We just can't afford it.
- 7 A You really should take it easy. You look stressed out.  
B That's as maybe, but I have a lot on at work.
- 8 A I've got you the last two tickets for the show.  
B Oh, great stuff! I knew you'd swing it for us.

### T 1.12 See p13

### T 1.13

- 1 A Excuse me, don't I know you from somewhere?  
B Actually, I don't think so.  
A Weren't you at Gavin's party last week?  
B Not me. I don't know anyone called Gavin.  
A Well, someone who looked just like you was there.  
B Well, that's as maybe but it certainly wasn't me.  
A I am sorry!
- 2 A Tony! Hi! Great to see you!  
B Well, I was just passing and I thought I'd drop in and say 'hello'.  
A Come on in! Have a drink!  
B You sure? You're not too busy?  
A Never too busy to talk to you.  
B Thanks, Jo. It'd be really nice to have a chat.  
A Fantastic. Let me take your coat.



## UNIT 2

### T 2.1 Marco Polo 1254-1324

Marco Polo was the first person to travel the entire 8,000-kilometre length of the Silk Route, the main trade link between Cathay (China) and the West for over 2,000 years. He was born in Venice, the son of a merchant. In 1271, when he was 17, he set off for China. The journey took him four years. His route led him through Persia, Afghanistan, and Mongolia. He travelled by boat, but mainly on horseback, and he frequently got lost. He was met by the emperor Kublai Khan. He was one of the first Europeans to visit the territory, and he travelled extensively. He went over mountain ranges, down rivers, and across deserts. He stayed in China for 17 years. When he left, he took back a fortune in gold and jewellery. He arrived back home in 1295. He wrote a book called *The Travels of Marco Polo*, which gave Europeans their first information about China and the Far East.

### Backpacker raises money for charity

Jake Ellis is in Singapore. He's on a nine-month backpacking trip round south-east Asia. He flew into Bangkok five months ago. Since then, he's been to Laos, Vietnam, Hong Kong, and Cambodia. But Jake hasn't been partying his way around the tourist spots. He's raised thousands of pounds for WaterAid by doing a sponsored bike ride from Saigon to Angkor Wat. He's learnt a lot about history in Vietnam, seen amazing scenery in Laos, and visited ancient temples in Cambodia. He's been staying in cheap hostels, along with a lot of other travellers. 'I've met a lot of really great people, but it hasn't all been easy. I've had diarrhoea a few times, and I've been mugged once. That was really scary.' Apart from that, his only worry is the insects. He's been stung all over his body. He's been travelling mainly by public transport - bus, train, and ferry, but when he's been able to afford it, he's also taken the occasional plane.

He's been taking it easy for a week before setting off again for the Philippines. 'Once you've got the travel bug, it becomes very hard to stay in the same place for too long.'

### T 2.2

He's been stung all over his body.  
He's visited ancient temples.  
He's been staying in cheap hostels.  
I've been mugged.  
I've met a lot of really great people.  
He's been to Laos and Vietnam.

### T 2.3 Marco Polo

- 1 When and where was he born?  
In 1254, in Venice.
- 2 How long did the journey to China take?  
Four years.
- 3 How long did he stay in China?  
For 17 years.
- 4 What did he bring back to Venice?  
Gold and jewellery.
- 5 What was the title of his book?  
*The Travels of Marco Polo*.

### Jake Ellis

- 6 How has he been travelling?  
Mainly by public transport.
- 7 Which countries has he been to?  
Cambodia, Vietnam, Laos, and China.



- 8 Where's he been staying?  
In cheap hostels.
- 9 How much has he raised for charity?  
Thousands of pounds.
- 10 Has he been ill?  
Yes, he has, a few times.

### T 2.4

#### Alan

They are ... one of the most eerie ... and er strange experiences you can possibly have. The first time I saw them, they appeared as a kind of shimmering curtain, over the top of a ridge of mountains, and they went from a greeny colour to a kind of purply-red colour. And they just stayed there. The second time I saw them, it was the most amazing sight because they were right above our heads, and they covered the whole of the sky. The other interesting thing is that er not everybody hears it, but they sometimes make a sound, a kind of er buzzing noise. It was a real sense of wonder and awe. I just kind of sat there with my mouth hanging open, just feeling kind of small.

#### Bernie

It was around ... er ... midday. About 30 of us set off. The weather was fantastic ... er ... not a cloud in the sky. We were all very excited. I don't think we really knew what to expect. There was a nervous kind of feeling amongst us. But then nothing happened at all for the first 20 minutes or so. We just sailed around, ... er ... waiting for something to happen. Then all of a sudden the captain came across the loudspeaker and said, 'I've spotted something!' So everyone got real excited and we ran to one side of the boat. And after a while, we spotted something in the water, but quite far away, so we couldn't really see. And then suddenly, this huge, beautiful creature leapt out of the water, er flipped around and landed back in again with a splash. It was massive, I mean, really massive. I don't think anyone was expecting it to be so big. It was really close and it did it again and again. And it was like once one had started, all the rest joined in. So eventually there were about six circling the boat. Er ... I think they were just curious about us. And they kept coming closer and closer. It was as if they were showing off er as if they were like putting on a show for us. We felt really emotional because they were such beautiful creatures. It was quite a privilege to see them. So after about maybe half an hour we had to go back to land and everyone was left feeling really exhilarated. It was a joyful experience.

#### Carol

I went there with a Taiwanese friend of mine and we were really excited about going. Er ... the day before it had been absolutely boiling hot. So on the day we went, I was wearing like er only a summer dress and sandals. Er ... and actually when we got there after a three-hour journey in a minibus, er it was raining and really windy. So, we were freezing. Erm ... there were these people selling these kind of ponchos for rain, which we bought, and then ... erm ... we climbed up and started walking along. It was amazing but the section we were on was quite ruined and quite difficult to walk up. And of course I didn't have sensible shoes on ... er ... you know because of the rain, and it was quite slippery. We were ... we were on the ridge of a hill and the wind was really gusting. And it was like catching my poncho and I could feel it blowing me along. And I really, really hate

heights and er we had this big drop right next to us er I was terrified. Of course the view was spectacular ... stunning, you could see it kind of snaking up the hills but I was just so frightened. I walked on a little bit but then, you know, I got so scared again I just had to start heading back. And coming down ... I mean, with the rain, and the wind, and the slippery stones, and the bad shoes, it was ... it was terrifying. I came down some of the steps sitting on my bottom, bumping down one by one. I was paralyzed with fear and at one point I just stopped er and then, this old woman, who was selling postcards and stuff, came up, grabbed my arm, and kind of walked me down er I was so grateful. So, the main thing I felt at the end was huge relief. I think I'd like to go there again but in better weather and with, you know, trainers or something a bit more sensible on.

### T 2.5

- 1 When you go for a job interview, it's important to make a good impression.
- 2 I think we're all getting tired. Can I make a suggestion? How about a break?
- 3 A lot of research has been done into the causes of cancer.
- 4 I think the director is basically doing a good job. He's reliable, he's honest, and he gets results.
- 5 I'd like to make it clear right now that I am totally opposed to this idea.
- 6 Right. I think we should make a start and get down to business.
- 7 I don't mind if we go now or later. It makes no difference to me.
- 8 Could you do me a favour and lend me some money?

### T 2.6

- 1 A She's made the big time as an actress. She can command \$20 million a movie.  
B \$20 million? Nobody's worth that!
- 2 A We'll never make the airport in time. The traffic's too bad.  
B Look! I think it's starting to move.
- 3 A What does she do for a living?  
B She's a corporate lawyer.  
A That sounds boring.  
B Humph! Boring it may be but it's really well paid!
- 4 A You'll all have to do more overtime and work weekends.  
B That does it! I'm going to look for another job!  
A Leave if you like but it's the only way this business will survive.
- 5 A How much do you want to borrow? £20?  
B Great. That'll do fine.  
A Just pay it back when you can. No hurry.
- 6 A How much Spanish do you speak?  
B Well, I can make myself understood.  
A Really? You sound pretty fluent to me.
- 7 A I hear the boss said you'd done really well.  
B Yeah. It really made my day.  
A But did you get a bonus as well as a compliment?  
B No, just a pat on the back.

### T 2.7

- 1 I'm so thirsty. I could do with a cup of tea.
- 2 We've bought an old flat. We're going to do it up over the next few years.
- 3 I think we should do away with the monarchy. They're all useless. And expensive.
- 4 I could never do without my personal assistant. She organizes everything for me.

### T 2.8

- 1 Thieves broke into the castle and made off with jewellery and antique paintings.
- 2 Jake's parents buy him loads of toys. They're trying to make up for always being at work.
- 3 What do you make of the new boss? I quite like him.
- 4 You didn't believe his story, did you? He made the whole thing up.

### T 2.9

#### One

I'll never forget my first trip to Giza and the sight of those massive stone structures. They stand just on the edge of the desert, taking you back to the time of the pharaohs. But they're surprisingly near to modern buildings, too. I kind of expected them to be right in the middle of nowhere.

#### Two

It's a brilliant city. We did a city tour on the first day to get a feel for the place, starting at the Reichstag. There's a viewing terrace right at the very top of the building where you get incredible views of the surrounding area. Er, we stayed on the old east side of the wall. Even though it's been unified since 1989, there is a different feel to the two halves of the city.

#### Three

We were staying on the outskirts of the city, so we only had a day for sightseeing. We began at the Capitol Building and walked the two miles to the Lincoln Memorial at the other end of the Mall. It's a kind of national park with gardens and lots of important museums like the National Museum of American History.

#### Four

I wouldn't have missed it for the world. It really is one of India's must-see destinations. It's a magnificent white building, right on the banks of the river, so you get wonderful reflections in the clear water. We also spent some time in Jaipur - I loved the colourful streets in the very heart of the Old City.

### T 2.10

We rented a flat right in the centre. The Grand Canal was just at the end of the street. It was wonderful to be in the very heart of the city.

### T 2.11

#### One

L Hello?

H Hi, Leo. We've just stopped for petrol. The sat nav is programmed and we'll be on our way again soon.

L Great, but I wouldn't rely on GPS to find us. We really are in the middle of nowhere. Use the sat nav as far as the village of Lower Bourton. Then head towards the village hall - there's a sign just before the river. Go over the bridge and follow the road round the bend. It's quite narrow so there's a 20-mile speed limit. Right, carry on along that road for about a mile and there's a sharp turn to the left. Er, that's the track down to the house. Drive right to the end of that track and that's where we are.

H Gosh, that sounds a bit complicated.

L You'll be fine. It's only about a 15-minute drive from the village. Ring again if you get lost.

#### Two

V Excuse me, sorry. How do I get out of here? I'm completely lost.

E Yeah, this place is a bit of a maze. So, to get to reception, go along this corridor to the end, and turn right. Go past the photocopiers,



then through the Design Department. There are some stairs on your left, or the lift is just through the double doors. OK?

- V Oh, erm, yes, I think so. So it's to the end of the corridor and left ...  
 E No, right.  
 V Yes, yes, that's what I meant.  
 E Good, good, well you can always ask again if you lose your way.  
 V Yes, I will, thank you.

### Three

- A Phil, I think we're going the wrong way. We walked past that statue about ten minutes ago.  
 P Don't panic, Andrea. I was born here. I know this place like the back of my hand.  
 A Heard that one before.  
 P Sorry?  
 A No, nothing. But I just want to find the pub before they stop serving lunch.  
 P It's fine. We just go across the square and it's one of the roads on the right.  
 A Oh, my feet are killing me.  
 P It's only about a five-minute walk. Just a bit further on and then on the right ... Yeah, this is it. ... Oh!  
 A Phil, this is a hairdresser's.  
 P Yes, thank you, Andrea, I can see that. I'm sure it's around here somewhere. Let's go back to the square.  
 A Or we could just check on my phone. It does have GPS, you know. Phil? Phil!



## UNIT 3

### T 3.1

- 1 A Who was the man?  
 B A 44-year-old Swedish man called Peter Skyllberg.
- 2 A Who found him?  
 B A worker who was clearing the road.
- 3 A Where was he when the accident happened?  
 B In northern Sweden, near the town of Umeå.
- 4 A When was he found?  
 B Last Friday.
- 5 A How did the accident happen?  
 B He'd been driving on a forest road when he was caught in a snowstorm and he got stuck in snowdrifts.
- 6 A How did he survive?  
 B By eating snow and keeping warm in a sleeping bag.
- 7 A How is he now?  
 B He's recovering from hypothermia in hospital.
- 8 A What was the temperature?  
 B -30°C.
- 9 A Why wasn't he found for 60 days?  
 B Because the road where he'd been driving was so remote.

### T 3.2

- A This is amazing.  
 B What is?  
 A Well, it says here that a 44-year-old man in Sweden was buried in snow for 60 days and he survived!  
 B 60 days! I don't believe it. Was he buried by an avalanche or something while he was skiing?  
 A No, no, he hadn't been skiing. He was driving his car and it was snowing hard and he got

stuck in snowdrifts.

- B But 60 days is over two months! How come nobody found him?  
 A Well, apparently he was on a remote road and his car was completely covered in snow.  
 B Like an igloo?  
 A Yeah.  
 B So, was he sitting in his car all that time?  
 A No, not sitting, lying. Fortunately he'd brought a sleeping bag and when they found him he was lying in that.  
 A Mmm? (sceptical) Very fortunate. Why didn't anyone report him missing?  
 B I don't know. It doesn't say.  
 A I'm not sure this story's true. Did he have stuff to eat?  
 B No, he said he'd eaten nothing but snow. He was really thin when they found him, emaciated it says here, and he had hypothermia.  
 A I'm not surprised. I just don't believe it's possible to live without food for 60 days and it's strange that nobody missed him. I think there's more to this story than meets the eye.

### T 3.3

- 1 He disappeared ten months ago.
- 2 He'd been living in the forest since May.
- 3 The car looked like an igloo.
- 4 He'd fallen out with his family.
- 5 They hadn't been trying to find him.
- 6 He wasn't discovered until February.

### T 3.4 Here is the news!

Good evening. Here is the news at six o'clock on Wednesday 31st October, read by Hugh Kernoid. One of Britain's richest men, the billionaire mobile phone tycoon John Caudwell, was left bruised and bloodied after being attacked during a robbery at his 16th-century mansion near Eccleshall, in Staffordshire. Mr Caudwell, 57, was beaten with a crowbar, then bound and gagged by a gang of masked men. The men then turned on his glamorous fiancée, former model Claire Johnson, 41.

Mr Caudwell and Miss Johnson had been chatting together in the kitchen, when the gang struck at 8.15 p.m. on Monday. The men, wearing balaclavas and dark clothes, stole money and jewels before escaping on foot across fields behind the house.

The couple, who have a six-year-old son, were treated by paramedics at the scene before being taken to a private hospital. Mr Caudwell had suffered a gash to his forehead and bruising to his arms.

Yesterday, about a dozen police officers were using metal detectors to search for clues in the grounds surrounding the property. Today, a 48-year-old man was arrested in connection with the robbery.

### T 3.5 And finally – an amazing achievement!

American stuntman and trapeze artist, Nik Wallenda, is the first person ever to cross a gorge near the Grand Canyon on a tightrope. Nik, 34, wearing shoes specially made by his mother, but without a safety harness, took just 22 minutes to walk from one side of the gorge to the other. With strong winds and dust blowing into his eyes, twice he seemed to lose his balance and he sat down but he got up again and kept going to the end. He was greeted by cheers as he stepped safely back onto land. The walk was watched by a global television audience of several million.

Daredevil Nik already holds seven world records including the longest walk over a waterfall, which he achieved last year when he crossed Niagara Falls.

### T 3.6

- 1 A What did he do that was so amazing?  
 B He crossed a gorge near the Grand Canyon on a tightrope.
- 2 A Has anyone done this before?  
 B No, never. He's the first.
- 3 A What was he wearing?  
 B Special shoes his mother had made for him.
- 4 A What wasn't he wearing?  
 B A safety harness.
- 5 A How long did it take?  
 B It took him just 22 minutes.
- 6 A What was the weather like?  
 B Not good. There were strong winds which created a lot of dust.
- 7 A How many people watched him?  
 B There was a global television audience of several million.
- 8 A What did he do the year before?  
 B He walked across the Niagara Falls.

### T 3.7

- 1 Who wrote it?
- 2 What kind of book is it?
- 3 What's it about?
- 4 Where and when is it set?
- 5 Who are the main characters?
- 6 Has it been made into a film?
- 7 How does it end?
- 8 Would you recommend it?
- 9 What did the critics say about it?
- 10 Has it won any awards?

### T 3.8 The Clinging woman

#### Presenter:

It's five to midnight. And tonight, we begin our new bedtime story. It's by that famous crime writer and author of many psychological thrillers, Ruth Rendell – one of her best known short stories ... *The Clinging Woman*!

#### Narrator:

#### The Clinging Woman

##### Part 1

The girl was hanging by her hands from the railings of a balcony. The balcony was on the twelfth floor of the high-rise block next to his. His flat was on the ninth floor and he had to look up to see her. It was half-past six in the morning. He had been awakened by the sound of an aircraft flying dangerously low overhead, and had got out of bed to look. His sleepy gaze, descending from the blue sky which was empty of clouds, empty of anything but the bright vanishing arrow of the aircraft, alighted – at first with disbelief – on the hanging figure.

### T 3.9 See p27

### T 3.10

#### Part 3

She said, 'I'm Lydia Simpson. You saved my life. I've come to thank you.'

His embarrassment was acute. 'Er ... you shouldn't have,' he said with a nervous smile. 'You really shouldn't. That's not necessary. I only did what anyone would have done.'

She was calm and tranquil, not at all his idea of a failed suicide. 'But no one else did,' she said.

'Won't you come in? Er ... have a drink or something?'



'Oh, no, I couldn't think of it. I can see you're just going out. I only wanted to say thank you very, very much.'

'It was nothing.'

'Nothing to save someone's life? I'll always be grateful to you.'

He wished she would either come in or go away. If this went on much longer the people in the other two flats on his floor would hear, would come out, and another of those bravest-deeds-of-the-year committee meetings would be convened. 'Nothing at all,' he said desperately. 'Really, er, I've almost forgotten it.'

'I shall never forget, never.'

Her manner, calm yet intense, made him feel uncomfortable and he watched her retreat into the lift – smiling pensively with profound relief. Luckily, they weren't likely to meet again. The curious thing was that they did, the next morning at the bus stop.

**Presenter:**

And there we leave the story for today. Tune in tomorrow at the same time to find out what happens next. In the meantime, goodnight to you all.

### T 3.11

**Amy**

Basically, it's a love story, but it's also a very funny and witty book. It's really about overcoming prejudice and accepting people for who they are. What I love is the interaction between Elizabeth Bennett and Mr Darcy – both extremely proud but secretly in love.

**Lucas**

It's just a classic superhero story, set in the modern day. Er, the Joker is back and it's up to Batman to save Gotham City from its impending doom. Erm, it's a proper thriller with fast-paced action and great special effects. Well worth a watch.

**Martina**

It's quite old now but it's become a classic. It gives a troubling vision of the future and, I guess, it's a kind of warning about depending too much on technology. It was pioneering cinema of its day – none of the special effects had ever been done before and its use of colour gave it a really special atmosphere.

**Adam**

From the moment the Professor finds the body of the curator in the Louvre, you just have to find out what happens. The whole mystery of the murder, and the clues and the puzzles keep you reading on. And most of the chapters end on a cliff-hanger, so it's a real page-turner.

### T 3.12

**Lucy and Rachel**

L Hey, Auntie Rach, here's that book you lent me. I know it's one of your favourites.

R Oh, you can keep it if you like, or pass it on. I've got it on my Kindle now for reading.

L What? You've got a Kindle?

R Yeah. I'm surprised you haven't got one.

L I have got one – at least I have an iPad Mini – it does the same kind of thing.

R Is that right? Well, I love my Kindle.

L But Auntie Rach, you always said you hated the idea of reading books on a screen. You said you liked turning proper pages.

R I know, I know, ... I was a real sceptic, but your uncle bought me one for my birthday and

as soon as I'd downloaded my first book – er I just fell in love with it. It's like I have a whole library in my handbag.

L Well, you were the last person I'd have thought of as a Kindle fan. It was you who gave me my love of books. I used to love going to the local bookshop and the library with you when I was a kid.

R I know Lucy, I loved those times too. And I really don't want the local shop or library to close. But you know I travel a lot in my work and my Kindle doesn't weigh down my luggage like my books did. And it's so much cheaper too ...

L Yeah, I know ... downloads are about half the price of printed books and ...

R ... and I don't have to plan in advance what I want to read.

L Sure, I can see all that but I've just always thought of you as my 'book auntie', that's all.

R Well, I still am, just in a different way. Anyway, I thought you students were meant to be permanently plugged in to one gadget or another.

L Yeah, you're right. I spend half my life on my computer at college and the other half on my mobile or iPad, but I like a break from a screen sometimes.

R Mmmm ... I can see that, but ...

L Yeah, just curling up in bed with a good novel or sitting reading in the sun – it's my idea of heaven. Screens aren't much good in the sun.

R Well yes ... but my Kindle's great for reading in bed and ...

L OK, OK Auntie. I get it – you're a complete convert.

### T 3.13

**Greg and Eddie**

G Hi, Eddie. Did you have a good weekend?

E Hi Greg. Yeah, not bad, thanks. I saw a good movie with some friends. There was a trailer for a 4D film. It looks amazing.

G 4D? I thought most people had given up on 3D. The last 3D film I saw was *Avatar*. Well that was pretty impressive, but since then most 3D films seem a waste of time. And those silly glasses just drive me mad.

E Yeah, I know what you mean, but this 4D idea sounds quite cool. The seats in the cinema move and vibrate to match the action on the screen. So you get more of an intense experience, especially from an action movie.

G Yeah, I'm not sure about that. You might end up covered in Coke or ice cream. To be honest, I can't remember the last time I actually went to the cinema. It costs a fortune. Give me a download to my laptop any day.

E Oh, come on. You can't beat the group experience of going to the cinema. What I love is knowing the whole room of people is feeling the same thing.

G Mmm, for me, the people are the problem. I always end up behind someone who talks through the whole thing. Or they eat crisps or popcorn. What I like about downloading is watching a movie when it suits me, you know, and in peace and quiet.

E Yeah, streaming a film to your PC or TV at home is OK, but you know a lot of movies were created for the big screen – the colour, the sound, everything needs to be on a big scale. You can't watch something like, you know like that, *Star Wars* on a tablet or a mobile.

G Yeah, you got a point there, some films are better at the movies but I still don't enjoy the

experience much. And me and my girlfriend Lisa can never, ever agree on what to watch. So she watches her movies on the TV and I watch mine on the laptop.

E Oh, you old romantic!

G [laughs] That sounds awful, I know, but Lisa's into all these black and white foreign films. It's all a bit heavy for me, and I just find those subtitles too distracting.

E Not all foreign films are in black and white, and full of misery, you know. There are some really, really great comedies and thrillers. Do you know what, I'll lend you a few of my DVDs.

G OK, yeah, fair enough, that's a deal. Maybe I'll surprise Lisa and take her to the arts cinema.

E One step at a time, Greg, one step at a time.

### T 3.14

A Jade's got a new boyfriend.

B A new boyfriend? Good for her!

A Apparently, he lives in a castle.

B Does he? How amazing!

A Yes. She met him in Slovenia.

B In Slovenia? That's interesting.

A Unfortunately, he can't speak much English.

B Can't he? I thought everyone could these days!

### T 3.15

1 A Sam wants to apologize.

B Does he?

A Yes. He's broken your precious Chinese vase.

B My precious Chinese vase? Oh, no!

2 A We had a terrible holiday.

B Did you?

A Yes. It rained all the time.

B Did it?

A Yes. And the food was disgusting!

B Was it? What a drag!

3 A I'm broke.

B Are you? How come?

A Because I just had a phone bill for £500.

B £500? Why so much?

A Because I have a girlfriend in Korea.

B Do you? How interesting!

4 A It took me three hours to get here.

B Did it?

A Yes. There was a traffic jam ten miles long.

B Ten miles long? That's awful!

A Now I've got a headache!

B Have you? Poor darling. I'll get you something for it.

5 A I'm on a mountain, watching the sun set.

B Are you?

A Yes. And I've got something very important to ask you.

B Have you? What is it? I can't wait!

A You'd better sit down. I'd like to marry you.

B Marry me? Wow!



## UNIT 4

### T 4.1

1 Oh dear! It's not that I dislike him, I just don't love him. How can I tell him I don't want to marry him without hurting his feelings? Trouble is I actually fancy his best friend!

2 There's this group of lads you see – they're always chasing me and I don't think it's for fun. But I can't tell my mum and dad – if they find out they'll go to the headteacher and complain and that would make everything much worse.

3 How do you tell someone when they look



awful? That dress doesn't suit her at all. But I don't know how to tell her, she obviously thinks she looks great in it.

- 4 Me and Emma are going clubbing, but I daren't tell my dad – he'd kill me. I've got an important exam next week and I haven't done a thing for it. I haven't a clue when I'll be back.
- 5 I know I'm not really ill. But it's a beautiful day and I don't want to sit in a stuffy office all day. I'm off to play golf. I never have days off usually.
- 6 I don't care who it is. I had a late night and I feel really rough this morning. I don't want to be disturbed by anybody at the moment even if it is urgent.

#### T 4.2 See p31

#### T 4.3

- 1 A Don't you like ice-cream?  
B I do, but I'm on a diet.
- 2 A Haven't you got a mobile phone?  
B Of course I have. Doesn't everyone have one?
- 3 A Can't you swim?  
B No, I can't. I've always been afraid of water.
- 4 A Isn't it your birthday today?  
B Yes, it is. I try to keep it quiet these days.
- 5 A Didn't you work in New York for a while?  
B Yes, I did. It was a great couple of years.
- 6 A Don't you live in Baker Street?  
B No, we used to, but we moved just round the corner last year.

#### T 4.4

##### Part one

My mate Milton is a funny guy. He's an insomniac, he's dyslexic, and he's an atheist. He's single, unemployed, and lives all alone in a tiny one-roomed flat without even a pet for company. Also, he's vegetarian and teetotal. He's pretty anti-social, actually.

#### T 4.5 See p32

#### T 4.6

##### Part two

I went round to see Milton last Sunday. As I walked up the drive, his dog started barking. His wife answered the door, and she called for Milton to come downstairs and join us in the living room. He was in a bad mood because he had overslept that morning and had been late for church. He also had a bit of a hangover, which he told me was the result of a wild party that they'd had at his house the night before. They'd had a barbeque in the garden with steaks and burgers. One of his favourite pastimes is doing crosswords, and he spends every lunch break at work doing them.

'So how are you, Milton?' I asked him.

'KO, mate, KO. How about you?'

Anyway, as I said, Milton's an insomniac, dyslexic, atheist. So the joke is that he lies awake all night wondering about the existence of dog. Get it?

#### T 4.7

- 1 Who did she give it to?
- 2 What do you want to have a word about?
- 3 Who did you dance with?
- 4 Where do you want a lift to?
- 5 Who did you get it from?
- 6 Who did you buy it for?
- 7 What are you thinking about?

#### 8 What do you need it for?

#### T 4.8 Secrets and lies

**Presenter** Now, it's that time again in the show when we hear your guiltiest secrets and your most terrible lies. Yes, it's Confessions time. Be prepared for astonishing admissions before you decide who can be forgiven. Our first caller is Robert from Surrey. Time to get your secret off your chest, Robert.

##### Robert

Well Simon, I'm ashamed to say, but during my final year at school, it was an all-boys school and it was a long time ago, er we had to take lots of exams to get what was then called 'The School Certificate'. Our form teacher, he was a miserable man called Mr Roper, was also our history teacher and er in those days the teachers set our final exam papers. Now, Mr Roper was never the most encouraging of teachers, well he often told us that we were no good and would never pass the Certificate. Anyway, one day, just before our exams, he excused himself from our history class and, unusually for him, he didn't lock his desk. So, with my fellow classmates watching intently I took it upon myself to go to the front of the class and look inside his desk. There, like glistening treasure, was our exam paper. Keeping an eye on the classroom door, I read out all the questions to my eager audience. I had never known them so silent or attentive! I then quickly replaced the paper and returned to my seat. Mr Roper came back into the classroom to find the whole class looking quietly studious. Well, you can imagine, the result was that everybody passed the exam. The school had never known such splendid results and Mr Roper was complimented on the high quality of his teaching.

I ask forgiveness, please, for putting 30 students out into the world in possession of the School Certificate, which they did not deserve. However, some of them did go on to become captains of industry, and have careers as MPs and judges.

**Presenter** Oh, Robert, that was a naughty thing to do, but we have all been tempted when it comes to exams. Now, on to Kevin from London.

##### Kevin

Yeah, alright, Simon, now I am a big Spurs fan, and a few years ago found myself in the awkward situation of marrying into a family of diehard Chelsea supporters. One Saturday afternoon, I was at home relaxing, watching the football results, while my then four-year-old daughter was at the other end of the sofa, colouring in. She suddenly looked up at me and asked, 'Daddy, what football team do you support?' I told her Tottenham Hotspur, and her next words made my blood run cold. 'Really? I support Chelsea.' I was horrified. The thought of my darling daughter becoming a Chelsea fan was just too much, so without really thinking, I replied, 'Well that's a shame because Father Christmas does not visit children who support Chelsea.' My daughter looked at me in horror, and I realized the full weight of the statement I'd just made. The natural thing to do at this point would have been to give her a hug and tell her that Daddy was only joking. But instead I gave her a hug and told her not to worry, as all she needed to do was to become a Spurs fan, and I would ring Father Christmas and she'd be back on his list.

I would like to beg forgiveness from my lovely daughter for any sleepless nights I may have caused her.

**Presenter** Feel better now, Kevin? I really hope

your little girl isn't scarred for life. So, moving on to the ladies. Surely they can't have such a shocking secret? Let's hear from Jane and find out. Jane from York.

##### Jane

When I was 15, I tried to earn a bit of extra money by waitressing at a local restaurant. This restaurant was very famous for an incredible fish soup, which was served with secret ingredients. I'd been given a little to try once, and it really was delicious. One night, when a table ordered the special dish, I was called by the chef to collect it from the kitchen. It smelt absolutely fantastic and my mouth started watering. Between the kitchen and the restaurant, there was a small corridor, not visible from the kitchen or the dining area. The temptation was too great. I balanced the heavy soup dish in one hand, lifted the spoon with the other, and poured the soup into my mouth. What I hadn't considered was that the soup would be scalding hot! There I was in the corridor, unable to scream or make any noise. The boiling liquid began peeling the skin away from the roof of my mouth and I was in agony. Terrified that the chef's wife would catch me, I did the only thing I could – I spat the soup back into the dish. Then I heard footsteps from the kitchen. There was no other option. I put my shoulders back, walked confidently out into the restaurant, and started to serve the soup to the poor unsuspecting diners, who had no idea that there was a little extra ingredient amongst the mussels and monkfish.

I ask forgiveness for my dreadful deed. I learned my lesson and never did it again!

**Presenter** Eurgh! All I can say to you, Jane, is remind me never ... ever to order the soup when I'm in York. And our final caller is Maggie from Wales. What, dear Maggie, is your guilty secret?

##### Maggie

Hello there. When I was an au pair working in France, I used to travel across by coach and ferry. It was quite a long and difficult journey and I preferred to travel at night in the hope of sleeping most of the way. Usually, I was lucky enough to sit next to someone who, like me, just wanted to get some shut-eye. But, on one particular occasion, I found myself squashed into a corner by a large, smelly, chatty man. I politely engaged in conversation, hoping that he would eventually give up, but he didn't. Finally, between Calais and Paris, the coach made a pit-stop and many of the passengers got off to stretch their legs. Erm, after walking around for ten minutes, I got back on the coach. There was no sign of my neighbour. The driver asked if everyone was back on board, but er, I couldn't speak. Perhaps it was the prospect of some much-needed peace and quiet, but I said nothing. Maybe he'd only been going this far anyway? Then I looked out of the window and saw the man running across the car park, waving frantically as we drove off into the night. I never even attempted to get the driver to stop. I couldn't think of a good reason why I hadn't noticed the man was missing in the first place. So, when I got off the coach in the cold light of dawn, I disappeared before the driver realized that the man wasn't there.

I now meekly seek forgiveness for leaving a poor man stranded in a foreign motorway service station in the dead of night. I have been haunted by the vision of him running after us ever since.

**Presenter** So, there you have it, dear listeners, today's four fibbers and wrong-doers. Who, if anyone, can we forgive?



**T 4.9**

- 1 A Gary's a really successful businessman.  
B Yeah, but he's a complete failure as a family man. He never sees his children.
- 2 A My grandad's so generous, he gives me a £20 note every time I see him.  
B Lucky you! My grandad's famed for his meanness. A fiver every birthday, if he remembers.
- 3 A Well, Henry, I'm pleased there's been some improvement in your behaviour this term ... but unfortunately your work has got worse.  
B Didn't I do OK in the test then?
- 4 A You're not going bungee jumping! It sounds really dangerous.  
B No, honestly, it's safe enough as long as you're careful.
- 5 A Our teacher is always criticizing us. I feel useless.  
B I know – it's not fair, he should give us more encouragement if he wants us to work hard.

**T 4.10**

- 1 A What a boring party!  
B You're right, it wasn't exactly an exciting evening.
- 2 A I don't know about you, but I thought the holiday was awful.  
B Well, it wasn't the most fun I've had.
- 3 A I can't believe how mean Jane is!  
B Mmmm, I suppose she's not famous for her generosity.
- 4 A How can you support Oldchester United? They're a hopeless football team!  
B Well, they're not the most talented around, that's for sure.

**T 4.11** See p37**T 4.12**

- 1 A This is a present for you.  
B For me! Oh, how kind! You shouldn't have, really. Thank you so much.  
C This is a present for you.  
D Thanks.
- 2 A Can you come to a party on Saturday?  
B No, I can't.  
C Can you come to a party on Saturday?  
D Oh, what a pity! I'm already going out, I'm afraid.  
C Oh, never mind!  
D Thanks for the invitation.
- 3 A Excuse me! Do you mind if I sit down here?  
B No, not at all.  
C Is anyone sitting here?  
D No.
- 4 A Can you give me a hand? I need to carry this box upstairs.  
B OK, if you like.  
C I wonder if I could possibly ask you a favour? Would you mind helping me with this box?  
D No, not at all.
- 5 A So I said ... (mumble mumble)  
B Pardon? I couldn't catch that. What did you say?  
C So I said ... (mumble mumble)  
D What? Speak up!
- 6 A Goodbye. Thanks for a lovely evening. We had a great time.  
B We enjoyed it, too. So glad you could make it. Safe journey back. See you soon.  
C Bye, thanks again. You must come to us next time.

- D We'd love to. Good night. Take care.  
E Goodbye. Thanks for the meal.  
F Bye. See you whenever.

**T 4.13**

- 1 A Do you think you could give me a lift to the station?  
B I'm terribly sorry I can't. I have to be at work by 8.30. I'll order you a taxi though.
- 2 A Could you possibly help me find my glasses? I can't find them anywhere.  
B Sorry! I'm afraid I have to dash or I'll miss the bus. I'm hopeless at finding things anyway.
- 3 A Hi! Listen, would you like to come round for a meal tomorrow evening? I'm cooking Chinese.  
B Oh, I'd love to, but I'm afraid I'm already going out.  
A Oh, what a shame! Another time, perhaps.
- 4 A Would you mind lending me your dictionary?  
B I would if I could but I'm afraid I forgot to bring it with me today. Sorry.
- 5 A Hi, it's Susan here. Could I ask you a big favour? I wonder if you could look after my dog next week? I'm going on holiday.  
B I'm terribly sorry, Susan, but I can't. I'd love to have Molly, you know I adore dogs, but I'm going away myself for a few days.
- 6 A Do you happen to know where the toilet is?  
B Sorry. I'm afraid I've no idea. Ask the guy serving drinks, he'll know.
- 7 A Would you like me to help you with this exercise? I think I know the answers.  
B That's really kind of you but I want to try and work it out for myself. Thanks anyway.

**T 4.14**

A = Anna, B = Ben, H = Henry, L = Luciana

B: Luciana! Hello! Great to see you. Come on in. Let me take your coat.

L: Thanks so much. Oh, these are for you.

A: Ah, what lovely flowers! How kind of you! Thank you so much. Now, I don't think you know Henry? Let me introduce you. Henry, this is Luciana.

H: Hello, Luciana. Nice to meet you. I've heard a lot about you.

L: Oh, I hope it was all good!

H: Where exactly are you from, Luciana?

L: Well, I'm Argentinian. I was born in Buenos Aires, but I've been working in the US for the last couple of years.

H: That's interesting. And what are you doing in London?

L: Work, I'm afraid. Actually, I'm on my way to Amsterdam for a conference, and I thought I'd stop over in London to see Anna and Ben. We used to work together in New York.

H: And how do you find London, Luciana? Is it like home, or is it very different?

L: Well, it is very different from Buenos Aires and New York! I know London quite well, actually, I always love it here.

B: Now, Luciana. What would you like to drink?

L: Oh, have you got a beer? No, sorry, I'll have a glass of white wine, if that's OK.

B: Right. I'll just get that for you.

L: Thanks.

A: Right, everybody. Dinner's ready. Come and sit down. Luciana, can you sit next to Henry?

L: Yes, of course.

B: Has everyone got a drink? Great. Cheers, everybody!

L: Cheers! It's great to be here.

A: Luciana, help yourself. Would you like some cheesy parsnips?

L: Cheesy parsnips? I don't think I've ever heard of them. What are they?

A: Well, they're parsnips coated in parmesan cheese and roasted. Would you like to try some?

L: Well, I'd love to but I'd better not – cheese doesn't always agree with me.

B: Another glass of wine, perhaps?

L: No, thanks very much, I've still got some. But do you think I could have a glass of water?

B: Yes, of course. Sparkling or still?

L: Er, just tap water will do. That's great. Thanks a lot.

A: Well, bon appetit everyone!

**UNIT 5****T 5.1**

- 1 I did my A-levels a few months ago, and I've just got my results. Fortunately, they're good, so I'm going to study geography at Cambridge University. The course lasts three years.
- 2 It's Saturday tomorrow, so I'm going to see the football with some mates. Oxford United are playing Bristol Rovers. It'll be a great game. Kick-off is at three o'clock, so we'll have a beer or two before the match.
- 3 Marie's having a baby soon, so we're both very excited. The baby's due in five weeks. If it's a boy, we're going to call him Jamie. And if it's a girl, she'll be Hatty.
- 4 What am I doing tomorrow, you say? Well, it's Thursday tomorrow, so I'll be doing what I always do on a Thursday. My daughter will come to see me, she'll be bringing the little 'uns, and we'll all have a cup of tea and a good old chat. And I'll bake a cake. A sponge cake with jam in it. They like that.
- 5 At the moment I'm packing, because tomorrow I'm going to France for a year. I'm going to study literature at the Sorbonne. My plane leaves at 10.30. My mum and dad are taking me to the airport. I have absolutely no idea how I'm going to carry all this lot.
- 6 Well, I work in the City. In the next few years I'm going to be even more successful. I hope I'll be earning twice what I'm getting now. I've set myself this goal. Before I'm 25 I'll have made a million.

**T 5.2**

- 1 She's going to study geography. It lasts three years.
- 2 He's going to a football match. The match starts at 3.00.
- 3 Because they're going to have a baby.
- 4 Her daughter and grandchildren will be visiting. They'll have a cup of tea and a chat.
- 5 Because she's going to France for a year. Her mother and father are taking her.
- 6 He's going to be successful. He'll be earning a lot of money. He'll have made a million pounds before he's 25.



**T 5.3**

- 1 Which university is she going to?
- 2 Who's he going to the match with? Who's playing?
- 3 What are they going to call the baby?
- 4 What sort of cake is she going to bake?
- 5 What time does her plane leave?
- 6 How much will he be earning?

**T 5.4**

- 1 I'm very excited. I'm going to see all my family this weekend.  
I don't know if I have time to come this evening. I'll see.
- 2 So you're off to the States for a year! What are you going to do there?  
I'm sure you will pass your exams, but what will you do if you don't?
- 3 I'll come with you if you like.  
I'm coming with you whether you like it or not.
- 4 Your school report is terrible. What are you going to do about it?  
What are you doing this evening?
- 5 I've had enough of her lazy attitude. I'm going to give her a good talking to.  
I'm giving a presentation at 3.00 this afternoon. I'm scared stiff.
- 6 John! Peter is leaving now. Come and say goodbye.  
The coach leaves at nine o'clock, so don't be late.
- 7 I'll see you outside the cinema at 8.00.  
I'll be seeing Peter this afternoon, so I'll tell him your news.
- 8 You'll have seen enough of me by the end of this holiday.  
I'm going to make a success of my life. You'll see.

**T 5.5 This is your captain speaking ...**

Good afternoon ladies and gentlemen. Welcome aboard this Virgin Atlantic flight to Boston. In a short time we'll be taking off. When we've reached our cruising speed of 575 miles per hour, we'll be flying at 37,000 feet. Our flight time today is six and a half hours. We'll be coming in over Newfoundland before heading down the coast to Boston. We arrive in Boston at about 17.45 US time.

The cabin crew will be serving an evening meal during the flight. If you need any assistance, just press the call button and a flight attendant will come to help you. In case of turbulence will you please keep your seatbelt fastened when you're in your seat.

In a few moments' time the cabin crew will be coming round with duty-free shopping. They will also be giving out landing cards for those who need them.

In 20 minutes we will be starting our descent into Boston Logan airport where the temperature is a chilly 3°C, and for the Americans on board that's 37°F, with a chance of snow. Please put your seats in the upright position and remain seated until the plane has come to a complete standstill. We hope you will fly again soon with Virgin Atlantic.

**T 5.6**

- 1 Do you think you'll ever get a job?  
I hope so.  
I might one day.  
It's possible, but I doubt it.  
I'm sure I will.  
I'm sure I won't.

- 2 Are you going out tonight?  
Yes, I am.  
I think so, but I'm not sure.  
I might be.
- 3 Do you think the world's climate will change dramatically in the next 50 years?  
I don't think so.  
I hope not.  
Who knows? Maybe.

**T 5.7 A NEET solution**

The term NEET is used to refer to people who are 'Not in Employment, Education, or Training'. In the UK, NEETs are usually defined as being in the 16–24 age group. The UK figure is estimated to be 1,163,000, which is 15.1% of this group. In the EU, for 15–29-year-olds, the rate is on average 15.4%, although there are huge differences across countries. These range from 5.5% in the Netherlands to about 25% in Bulgaria. The estimated annual cost to the EU per year is about €120bn.

Figures for other developed economies reveal similar challenges. In the USA, the 2010 NEET figure stood at 15.6%, in New Zealand 13.1%, and Japan 9.7%. And a university degree is no longer a guarantee to a job. In the UK in 2011, a quarter of graduates aged 21 were unable to find work after leaving university.

**T 5.8****Darrell**

Well, to be honest I've never had a job. I left school at 16 'cos sitting at a desk just wasn't my kind of thing. I couldn't wait to get out there and start work. Only problem was, I didn't have any qualifications and there weren't any jobs! Can't believe how stupid I was, really. I just messed around for a couple of years. But the one thing that did interest me was cars. I used to hang around down the local garage and the owner showed me some basic mechanics. I took to it straightaway but he couldn't give me a job because I didn't have maths and English. It was the same everywhere I went: no qualifications – no job or training. Then I got given a personal adviser on this new NEETS programme. This guy, Martin, helped me take things one step at a time. Before starting back into education, we looked at why it went wrong in the first place. I started to take a bit of responsibility for myself and get the help I needed. So here I am two years later with the qualifications I never got at school and an apprenticeship in a car factory. I've never wanted anything so much in my life – there were only 12 places and hundreds of young guys ... and girls ... applied. It's been tough but I know how lucky I am to get a second chance. It's going to be great. I'll be learning in a really practical way to get a good grounding in the industry. I am not going to mess it up this time. Then what I'd really like to do is carry on my training in Germany. They do a lot with apprenticeships over there, and they make the best cars in the world, of course.

**Kara**

No-one ever thinks of Canada as an unemployment black spot but things are pretty tough here right now. I've been out of university for almost two years and I've lost count of the number of applications I've filled in. Half the time you don't even get a reply. And I stopped looking for things in my subject area – journalism and economics – a long time ago. Sure I've had part-time jobs, waitressing, hotel reception work, the usual thing, but it's such a waste of my skills.

Sometimes I just feel like I'm going round in circles. I don't have the relevant experience, so I can't get a job. But without getting my foot in the door, how do I get the experience I need? The closest I got to my dream was an internship for a local newspaper. I was happy to take the tiny salary they offered and was all set to start when – can you believe it? – they found someone who was willing to work for nothing! So, all those exams and three years at university to be an unpaid slave! I found that so offensive. Then I started to think a bit more creatively about how I could spend the next year. If Canada couldn't offer me anything, where could? I looked into volunteering programmes outside Canada. I figured I might as well be out there taking a risk and doing something worthwhile. So, I'm going to Malawi next month to work on a literacy programme, mainly with children. It'll be hard being a long way from home and in a strange place but I'm going to try and do some reporting on the situation there. Who knows? It might just prove to a newspaper editor that I'm the journalist for the job.

**Loukas**

When I told my friends that I was going to leave Athens to do a course in farming, they couldn't quite believe it. You see, I'd spent a lot of time and my parents' money getting a business degree and trying to improve my English. Anyway, after leaving university, I had no proper full-time job, just part-time contracts, and so I got nearly nothing in unemployment benefit. And after a year the benefits stopped, so that was when I knew I had to make a decision. I thought about a masters but unemployment has doubled among postgraduates in Greece, so what would be the point of more academic qualifications? The other option was to go abroad, but half of Europe is in the same situation, and I don't want to leave my family because of the financial crisis. So, it's going to be farming for me. You could say that it's in the blood because my grandfather was a farmer and I'll be taking on a farm on land that the family still owns. But first, I'm doing a course at the American Farm School in Thessaloniki. This is a growing trend apparently – applications are up by more than 100 per cent. In the long term, I want to produce the best that Greece has to offer – excellent lamb, cheese, and honey. And maybe look into ecotourism with farm stays, things like that. You see, I'll need my business head to make it all work. It feels strange to say 'I'm going to be a farmer' and my mother is a bit disappointed. She put up with a lot to make sure I had a good education. But I'm trying to see it as an opportunity. And I want to make it a success so that I can pay my parents back for their support.

**T 5.9**

- 1 The wedding took place in an old country church. It was lovely, but it was miles away. It took ages to get there.
- 2 My son's buying cigarettes, but I'll soon put a stop to that. I won't give him any more pocket money.
- 3 Please don't take offence, but I don't think your work has been up to your usual standard recently.
- 4 I told you that boy was no good for you. You should have taken my advice and had nothing to do with him.
- 5 The older you get, the more you have to learn to take responsibility for your own life.
- 6 My boss is putting pressure on me to resign, but I won't go.



- 7 I tried to get the teacher's attention, but she took no notice of me at all.
- 8 Children never say 'Thank you' or 'How are you?' to their parents. They just take them for granted.

### T 5.10

- 1 The shop takes on a lot of extra staff every Christmas.
- 2 The lecture was too complicated, and the students couldn't take it all in.
- 3 My business really took off after I picked up six new clients.
- 4 You called me a liar, but I'm not. Take that back and say sorry!
- 5 Put some music on. Whatever you want.
- 6 The disgusting smell of the cheese put me off eating it.
- 7 Could you put away your clothes, please. Your room's a total mess.
- 8 Put your cigarette out! You can't smoke in here.

### T 5.11

- 1 A Hello. ABC Logistics. Kathy speaking. How may I help you?  
B Hello, could you put me through to Katya Hantelmann, please?
- 2 A Hello.  
B Hello, Pat. It's me, Dave.  
A Dave! Hi! How are things?  
B Not bad. Busy, busy, busy, but life's like that. How's everything with you?  
A Oh, you know, we've all got the flu, and Mike's away on business, so I've got to do the lot. School, shop, kids, cook, clean. It's great! What are you up to?  
B This and that ...  
A How's your mother, by the way?  
B She's a lot better, thanks. Really on the mend.
- 3 Welcome to National Phones. To help us deal with your call more efficiently, please select one of the following options. For customer services, press 1. To update your account or for billing enquiries, press 2. To request a brochure or hear about the latest special offers, press 3. To hear these options again, press the hash key. To speak to an operator, please hold.

### T 5.12

Thank you for calling Fast Response Credit. Our priorities are service, quality, and customer satisfaction. To help us deal with your call more efficiently, please select one of the following options. To update your account details, press 1; to check your balance, press 2; to report a lost or stolen card, press 3; to request a statement, press 4; to leave a voice message, press 5. For all other enquiries, please hold and you will be connected to an operator.

We are currently experiencing unusually heavy call volumes. You may experience a delay of up to five minutes. Please hold and you'll be connected to an operator shortly.

Your call is important to us. Please continue to hold. Alternatively, please submit your query through [www.fastresponse.com](http://www.fastresponse.com).

Thank you for calling Fast Response Customer Services Department. All our lines are now closed. To speak to an operator, please call Monday to Friday, 8.30 a.m. to 4.30 p.m.

### T 5.13

- A So, Barry. It was good to talk to you. Thanks very much for phoning.

- B My pleasure. By the way, how's your golf these days? Still playing?

- A No, not much. I just don't seem to find the time these days. Anyway, Barry ...

- B What a shame! You used to enjoy it so much.

- A It's true. Right, Barry. I must fly. I'm late for a meeting.

- B OK. Don't want to keep you. So, you'll give me a ring when you're back, right?

- A I certainly will. And you'll email me a copy of the report?

- B It'll be with you first thing tomorrow.

- A That's great, Barry. Have a good weekend!

- B Same to you, too! Bye, Andy.

- A Bye, Barry.



## UNIT 6

### T 6.1 Jamie Oliver

Jamie Oliver has hit the big time in a big way. He's famous worldwide as an extremely successful chef, cookbook writer, restaurateur, and media personality. His many TV programmes have been broadcast in a great number of countries including the US, Australia, Brazil, and Japan, and the accompanying cookbooks have been translated into a great many languages. Since 2004 he's given a lot of time and energy to improving unhealthy diets in schools both in the UK and the US.

His rise to fame and fortune came early and swiftly. By the age of eight he'd already started cooking at his parents' pub. It was an easy way to earn a little pocket money! After a couple of years in catering college, and some time in France, he started working in restaurants. He worked under a few famous chefs in London, before he was spotted by a TV producer at just 21 and his life changed.

Even though he had very little experience, he had a huge amount of enthusiasm for cooking, and was very natural in front of the camera. His first TV programme featured him zipping about London on his scooter buying ingredients and cooking for his friends, all to a rock and roll soundtrack. The recipes didn't involve complicated cooking techniques and used lots of fresh ingredients and herbs. It attracted a completely new audience that previously didn't have any interest in food programmes. Jamie Oliver became an overnight success.

Jamie is married to former model Juliette (Jools) Norton. They have several children, three daughters, Poppy Honey, Daisy Boo, Petal Blossom, and one son, Buddy Bear.

So what's his recipe for success? 'A little bit of luck, a little bit of passion, and a little bit of knowledge!' he says.

### T 6.2

- 1 'How much money have you got in your pocket?'  
'About 20 euros.'
- 2 'How many cups of coffee do you drink a day?'  
'It depends. I have milky coffee for breakfast, sometimes another mid-morning, then maybe one or two, black, after lunch and dinner.'
- 3 'How many times have you been on a plane?'  
'About five or six.'
- 4 'How much time do you spend watching TV?'  
'A couple of hours a night, just before I go to bed, I suppose.'

- 5 'How much sugar do you have in your coffee?'  
'Just half a spoonful in white coffee, and none in black.'

- 6 'How many pairs of jeans do you have?'  
'Three. A black pair, a blue pair, and an old pair I wear when I do dirty jobs like cleaning the car.'

- 7 'How many books do you read in one year?'  
'I honestly don't know. Ten? 15? I read most when I'm on holiday.'

- 8 'How much homework do you get a night?'  
'Too much! About two hours, maybe? It depends.'

- 9 'How many English teachers have you had?'  
'Er ... let me see ... about ten, I guess.'

- 10 'How many films do you watch a month?'  
'One or two in the cinema, and one or two on television.'

### T 6.3

- 1 There's no need to rush. We've got masses of time.
- 2 She's got loads of money. I think she inherited it.
- 3 We've got heaps of food for the party. Don't buy any more.
- 4 When my daughter comes back from university, she always brings piles of washing.
- 5 I can't see you today. I've got tons of things to do.
- 6 There were millions of people at the sales. I couldn't be bothered to fight my way through them.

### T 6.4

It's time for Mad about Ads, the weekly programme for those of you who are mad about ads! This week Sonia looks at advertising that really is in your face or ... should I say ... on your body. Over to you Sonia.

Thanks Gary.

Well, advertisements, love 'em or hate 'em, they are everywhere. It's been estimated that the average person is exposed to anything from about 250 to a whopping 3,000 different advertising messages every day. The traditional media of TV, radio, newspapers, and magazines, and street advertising have been supplemented by mobile ads on tablets and smart phones. But there is growing evidence that the general public are becoming immune to more usual forms of advertising. A recent survey of smart phone users found that 50 per cent of them don't even notice adverts on their phones, and as few as 7 per cent actually buy something as a result of them. And nearly half of respondents in the survey didn't like having ads on any device at all. They found them annoying and distracting.

So in the face of this, some advertisers have been using what might be the ultimate mobile ad space – the human body. American entrepreneur, Brandon Chicotsky, really has been using his head. Totally bald, Chicotsky came up with the ingenious idea of converting bald patches into profit by using them as advertising space. He went on to set up Baldlogo.com, which allows companies to have their logo temporarily tattooed on to the heads of guys without much hair! For just \$320 a day, companies really can get a head start. Sorry!

Similar enterprise was shown by two British graduates who charged by the day to paint company logos on their face and forehead. Ross Harper and Ed Moyse raised £50,000 with this money-making scheme, enough money to pay off



all their student debts.

A marketing campaign in the UK for an online beauty products store, FeelUnique.com, also made use of temporary tattoos, but this time on people's eyelids! They paid ten men and women to apply a tattoo with the company's web address and then to wink at strangers. Apparently, an eye-watering 6,000 people applied for the job, and the lucky ten were paid just £100 to wink at people 1,000 times.

And last but not least, an example from the home of ingenious advertising, Japan. There's been a growing popularity in 'body advertising' with companies across Tokyo. This involves attaching an advert in the form of a sticker or transfer onto different parts of the body – with teenage boys, usually their face, and teenage girls, ... their bare thighs. Now, I know advertisers have always used beautiful women to promote products but this seems to me to be a step too far. Back to you Gary. Fascinating stuff Sonia, thank you. And I agree with you – putting a sticker on your face is one thing, but putting it on a girl's thigh is quite another. Do you agree with Sonia and me? Tell us what you think! Give us your thoughts and reactions on our website ...

### T 6.5

- a 'export      ex'port
- b 'import      im'port
- c 'decrease    de'crease
- d 'increase    in'crease
- e 'progress    pro'gress
- f 'record      rec'ord
- g 'refund      re'fund
- h 'produce      pro'duce
- i 'permit      per'mit
- j 'transport   trans'port
- k 'insult      in'sult
- l 'protest      pro'test

### T 6.6

- 1 Scotland imports a lot of its food from other countries. Its exports include oil, beef, and whisky.
- 2 I'm very pleased with my English. I'm making a lot of progress.
- 3 Ministers are worried. There has been an increase in the number of unemployed.
- 4 But the number of crimes has decreased, so that's good news.
- 5 How dare you call me a liar and a cheat! What an insult!
- 6 There was a demonstration yesterday. People were protesting about blood sports.
- 7 He ran 100m in 9.58 seconds and broke the world record.
- 8 Don't touch the remote! I'm recording a film.
- 9 Britain produces about 40% of the EU's oil.

### T 6.7

- a 'refuse      re'fuse
- b 'present    pre'sent
- c 'minute    min'ute
- d 'desert     de'sert
- e 'content    con'tent
- f 'object     ob'ject
- g 'invalid    in'valid
- h 'contract   con'tract

### T 6.8

- 1 A refuse collector.
- 2 An unidentified flying object.
- 3 A desert in northern Africa.
- 4 Presents!
- 5 The contents pages.

- 6 con'tent      mi'ute
- 'contract      re'fuse
- in'valid

### T 6.9

- 1 A Mike! Long time no see! How are things?  
B Good, thanks, Jeff. Business is booming. What about yourself?
- 2 A I'm afraid something's come up, and I can't make our meeting on the 6th.  
B Never mind. Let's go for the following week. Is Wednesday the 13th good for you?
- 3 A What are your travel arrangements?  
B I'm getting flight BA 2762, at 18.45.
- 4 A Could you confirm the details in writing?  
B Sure. I'll email them to you as an attachment.
- 5 A They want a deposit of 2½ percent, which is £7,500, and we ... get ... thousand ... a ... a 2,000 ...  
B Sorry, I didn't quite get that last bit. What was it again?
- 6 A I'll give you £5,250 for your car. That's my final offer.  
B Great! It's a deal. It's yours.
- 7 A I don't know their number offhand. Bear with me while I look it up.  
B No worries. I'll hold.
- 8 A OK. Here's their number. Are you ready? It's 0800 205080.  
B I'll read that back to you. Oh eight double oh, two oh five, oh eight oh.
- 9 A So what's your salary, Dave? 35K? 40K?  
B Hey! Mind your own business! You wouldn't tell anyone yours!
- 10 A Have you applied for that job?  
B There's no point. I'm not qualified for it. I wouldn't stand a chance.

### T 6.10 See p53



## UNIT 7

### T 7.1 See p54

### T 7.2

- 1  
A What the ... where d'you think you're going?  
B What d'you mean?  
A Well, you're not allowed to turn right here.  
B Who says it's not allowed?  
A That sign does mate. 'No Entry', you ought to be able to read that.  
B It's impossible to see.  
A You'd better get your eyes tested, you had. You're not fit to be on the roads.
- 2  
A If I were you, I'd swallow my pride and forgive and forget.  
B Never! I refuse to.  
A You'll have no choice in the end. You won't be able to ignore each other forever.  
B Maybe I'll forgive him but I'll never be able to forget.  
A Surely it's possible to talk it over, and work something out. You have to for the sake of the children.  
B Oh dear! I just don't know what to do for the best.

### T 7.3

- 1  
A You won't tell anyone, will you?  
B Of course I won't.  
A You really mustn't tell a soul.  
B Trust me. I won't say a word. I promise.  
A But I know you. You're bound to tell someone.  
B Look. I really can keep a secret, you know. Oh, but is it OK if I tell David?  
A That's fine. He's invited too. It's just that I want it to be a big surprise. What do you think I should wear?  
B If I were you I'd buy something new and expensive. I'll go shopping with you if you like.
- 2  
A I don't know if I can play this evening.  
B But you have to. You promised to.  
A Yeah, but I'm not allowed to go out on weekday evenings. My parents won't let me, not during my exams.  
B Why don't you tell them that you're coming over to my house to do some revision?  
A But somebody might see me playing and tell them. You'd better find somebody else.  
B There is nobody else. We'll just have to cancel the match.

### T 7.4

- 1 I'll be able to take you to the airport after all.
- 2 Is it OK if I make a suggestion?
- 3 You're allowed to smoke in the designated area only.
- 4 If I were you I wouldn't wear red. It doesn't suit you.
- 5 You are required to obtain a visa to work in Australia.
- 6 It's always a good idea to make an appointment.
- 7 You're bound to pass. Don't worry.
- 8 You aren't permitted to walk on the grass.
- 9 I didn't manage to get through, the line was engaged.
- 10 I refuse to discuss the matter any further.

### T 7.5 See p56

### T 7.6 Exciting news

- R Hello!
- I Rick, Rick is that you? I've got to talk to you.
- R Isabel, hi! Why all the excitement?
- I Well, can you remember that competition I entered, just for a laugh, a few weeks ago?
- R Yes, I can. I remember you doing it in the coffee bar. It was the one in the *Daily Sun*, wasn't it? Didn't you have to name loads of capital cities?
- I Yeah, that's it. You've got it. Well, get this, I've won! I came first!
- R Never! I don't believe it! What's the prize?
- I A trip to New York.
- R You must be kidding! That's brilliant. For how long?
- I Just three days – but it's three days in the Ritz Carlton, of all places!
- R Well, you should be able to do quite a lot in three days. And the Ritz Carlton! I'm impressed! Doesn't that overlook Central Park?
- I Yes, it does.
- R I thought so. Not that I've been there, of course.
- I Well, you can now.
- R What do you mean? How would I ever be able to?
- I Well, it's a trip for two and I'd really love it if you would come with me. Will you?



- R You can't be serious? You know I'd love to! But why me? Surely you should be taking David?
- I Haven't you heard? David and I have split up.
- R Oh, I'm sorry! I didn't know. When did this happen?
- I Well, a couple of weeks ago. We haven't been getting on well for ages.
- R Well, what can I say? How could I possibly refuse an offer like that?
- I You'll come then?
- R I certainly will.

### T 7.7 An arranged marriage

I = Interviewer, P = Pratima

- I How old were you when you met your husband, Pratima?
- P Mmm ... I was just 16.
- I Were you still at school?
- P No, I'd left school but I was having private tuition at home, to prepare me for some exams.
- I And your father arranged your marriage? Is that right?
- P That's right.
- I Could you tell me how he did that?
- P Well, he looked around for a suitable husband. He asked friends and relatives if they knew anyone, and found out about their education, their background, and ... er ... most importantly the family's background. He managed to get a lot of information about them, you know.
- I And how long did this take?
- P Not too long in my case, but you know ... er ... sometimes a father can see up to a hundred men before he chooses one. For my sister and my elder sister he saw over 100 men before ...
- I He saw how many? Goodness! It must take up a lot of time.
- P Yes, it can be difficult to decide, but for me he saw only two ... er ... one in the morning and one in the afternoon and ... er ... he chose the second one.
- I What a day! Can you tell me about it?
- P Yes ... well, in the morning the first man was very wealthy, and he was well-dressed and ... er ... had good manners, but ... er ... he hadn't had a good education.
- I Ah. And the other one?
- P Well, he wasn't terribly wealthy, but he was well-educated and he came from a good background ... er ... his family owned a village and were like princes. He was 22 and studying law.
- I And this one your father chose?
- P That's right. I think he thought money wasn't everything – for my father education was more important and anyway, if a man is well-educated, he will earn in the end. Actually, Shyam, that's my husband's name, Shyam didn't want to get married at all, but his father had told him he must ... so ... er when he came to my house to meet my father, he was very badly-dressed because he hoped my father would refuse him. But luckily for me, my father did like him, and ... er ... he had to say yes.
- I He had to?
- P Oh yes, he had promised his father.
- I And what about you? Did you meet both men?
- P Yes, I met them that day. First my family spoke to them and then they called me in and we ... er ... we spoke for four ... four or five minutes.
- I And did you prefer the second?
- P Well, actually I wasn't sure. I left it to my father.
- I You must trust him a lot!

- P Oh, yes.
- I So what happened next?
- P Well, after a while, there was a special day when I went to meet his family and his family came to meet mine. It was ... er kind of an engagement party. But we – you know – Shyam and me, we used to be on the phone every day and we'd meet regularly, but always we had to have a chaperone. And after ten months we got married.
- I And how long have you been married?
- P Nearly 25 years now.
- I And ... it's been a successful marriage? Your father made a good choice?
- P Oh ... yes, of course and we have two beautiful sons. They're 22 and 17 now.
- I And will you arrange their marriages?
- P Oh yes. My husband is planning them now. He's been asking families for some time already and ...
- I And your sons want it?
- P Well, Krishna, he's the eldest, he's OK about it – he's studying hard and hasn't got the time to meet girls, but ...
- I Yes, what about the youngest? Ravi, isn't it?
- P Yes ... er, well actually, Ravi's not so keen. It might be difficult to persuade ...
- I But you still believe that the system of arranged marriages is a good one?
- P Oh yes, I do, of course I do – but you know it depends on a lot ... er ... especially on the family choosing the right person. But one main reason, I think it does work, is that the couple enter the marriage not expecting too much – if you see what I mean. Actually, you know, there are many more divorces between couples who thought they were marrying for love. You know, my mother ... er ... she had to marry at 13 but she's still happily married nearly 50 years later. Of course, nowadays 13 is considered too young, but you know ... times change.
- I Yeah, that's very true. Thank you very much indeed, Pratima.

### T 7.8

- 1 Your friends went to Alaska on holiday? They went where?
- 2 You got home at 5.00 this morning? You got home when?
- 3 You paid €300 for a pair of jeans? You paid how much?
- 4 You met the president while you were out shopping? You met who?
- 5 He invited you to the palace for a drink? He did what?

### T 7.9

- 1 You always get out of doing the washing-up. It's not fair. How did our secret get out? Everyone knows now! If news of this gets out, there'll be a huge scandal!
- 2 You're always getting at me! Leave me alone! What are you getting at? Just say what you mean! I can't get at the sugar. It's at the back of the cupboard.
- 3 It took me ages to get over the operation. He couldn't get his point over to me at first. He had to explain it again. I can't get over how much your children have grown!
- 4 That boy is always getting up to something naughty!

- We got up to page 56 in the last lesson. I had to get up at 5 a.m. to catch the plane.
- 5 I couldn't get through to Joe. I don't think his phone's working. We got through loads of money whilst we were in Paris. I failed, but Sue got through the exam with flying colours.
- 6 She can always get round her father and get exactly what she wants. I'm sorry. I just haven't got round to replying to your invitation yet. I can't see how we can get round this problem. It's a difficult one.

### T 7.10

- 1 A They're obviously madly in love.  
B Yeah, they do seem to get on quite well.
- 2 A His family are pretty well off, aren't they?  
B You can say that again! They're absolutely loaded!
- 3 A You must have hit the roof when she crashed your car.  
B Well, yes, I was a bit upset.
- 4 A I think Tony was a bit rude last night.  
B Too right! He was totally out of order!
- 5 A I can't stand the sight of him!  
B I must admit, I'm not too keen on him either.
- 6 A He isn't very bright, is he?  
B You're not kidding. He's as thick as two short planks.
- 7 A I'm fed up with this weather! It's freezing.  
B I suppose it is a bit chilly.
- 8 A Well, that was a fantastic holiday!  
B Yes, it was a nice little break.
- 9 A I'm knackered. Can we stop for a rest?  
B OK. I feel a bit out of breath, too.
- 10 A I'm absolutely dying for a drink.  
B Yes, my throat's a bit dry, I must say.

### T 7.11

- 1 A Is that a new watch? I bet that cost a bit.  
B A bit? It cost a fortune!
- 2 A It's a bit chilly in here, don't you think?  
B You can say that again! I'm absolutely freezing!
- 3 A These shoes are rather nice, aren't they?  
B They're gorgeous! I want them!
- 4 A Can we stop at the next service station? I could do with something to eat.  
B Me too. I'm starving! I didn't have breakfast this morning.
- 5 A I think those two like each other, don't you?  
B Like's the wrong word. They're obviously crazy about each other.
- 6 A I bet you were a bit upset when your team lost.  
B Me? Upset? I only cried myself to sleep!



## UNIT 8

### T 8.1 Susan Magdalane Boyle

Susan Magdalane Boyle (born 1961) is a singer from a small town in Scotland who became internationally famous after appearing on the TV programme *Britain's Got Talent*, where she sang 'I dreamed a dream' from the musical *Les Misérables*.

Susan, whose father, Patrick, was a miner, was the youngest of eight children in a musical family. When at school, she was diagnosed with learning difficulties and was often the target of bullies,



who called her 'Simple Susan'. However, she began singing in school productions and both her teachers and her mother, Bridget, recognising her talent, encouraged her to perform in singing competitions, which she did for many years.

In 2007, her beloved mother died and Susan stopped singing. She stayed at home with her cat, Pebbles, for two years, until finally she was persuaded to enter *Britain's Got Talent*. The audience, most of whom looked sceptically at this plump, 48-year-old woman, were absolutely amazed when she opened her mouth to sing. Susan Boyle singing 'I dreamed a dream' became a YouTube sensation, viewed by 66 million people worldwide, particularly in America.

In the years after the show Susan, or 'SuBo' as she is now known, went on to make four best-selling albums, two of which topped the charts in the UK, and the US. There is even a stage musical of SuBo's life called, of course, 'I dreamed a dream'. She now travels the world singing, but always returns to the same family home in Scotland.

### T 8.2 See p63

#### T 8.3

- 1 A It's raining again.  
B Oh no! Another miserable day when we're stuck indoors.  
A Cheer up! It's good for the garden.  
B I don't care about the garden. I need some sunshine.
- 2 A How was your holiday?  
B Great, thanks. Just what we needed.  
A Did you do much?  
B Not a lot. We just sat by the pool, read books, and took it easy for two whole weeks. Absolute bliss.
- 3 A Have you heard about Dave and Maggie?  
B No. Tell me, tell me!  
A Well, last week they went to a party, had this huge row in front of all these people, and ...  
B Did it get physical?  
A Oh yeah! Maggie shoved Dave into a flowerpot, told him to get lost and went off with another bloke!  
B What! I'm amazed! I just can't believe Maggie'd do such a thing. It doesn't sound like her at all.
- 4 A Come on in. You must be shattered!  
B Oof, I am. I've been travelling for the past 30 hours and I haven't slept a wink.  
A I know – I can never sleep on a plane, either. Just sit down, take it easy, and I'll get you a drink.
- 5 A How's the new job going?  
B Good, thanks, very good – but it's quite difficult. I'm having to deal with so many new things. Still, I'm enjoying it all.  
A Mmm – I know what you mean.  
B It's great to be doing something that's so satisfying, and meeting so many people from abroad.  
A Absolutely.
- 6 A There is just nothing good on TV tonight!  
B What about that wildlife programme?  
A D'you mean the one about the life of frogs?  
B Yeah – does it look any good?  
A You're kidding. It looks absolute rubbish.
- 7 A What's the matter with you?  
B Oh my gosh – I've just put my foot right in it.  
A What d'you mean?  
B Well, I was talking to that lady over there and I asked her when her baby was

due, and ... er ... she told me she wasn't pregnant.

A Oh, no! That's awful!

#### T 8.4

A cool, young man was walking slowly down the busy street lost in thought, listening to music and humming to himself.

#### T 8.5

- 1 A beautiful, long-haired girl was sunbathing drowsily on the wide, white, sandy beach, wearing a fashionable polka-dot bikini.
- 2 A huge, bald, angry-looking policeman came running into the crowded room brandishing a gun.
- 3 A ten-year-old English boy found a black, leather wallet containing €1000 on the Paris Metro.
- 4 The once-famous, ageing actor Kirk Power was seen entertaining a young blonde lady in the expensive French restaurant frequented by many glamorous film stars.
- 5 The much-longed-for skiing holiday in Austria was a complete success, enjoyed by every member of the family.

#### T 8.6

- 1 A Did you get very wet in that shower?  
B Shower! It was a downpour! We're absolutely soaking!
- 2 A I bet you were quite excited when your team won.  
B Excited! We were absolutely thrilled!
- 3 A I'm so pleased you are coming on holiday with us.  
B Well, I was absolutely delighted to be asked!
- 4 A Come on, nobody will notice that tiny spot on your nose.  
B They will, I just know they will! It's absolutely enormous!
- 5 A I thought she looked rather silly in that flowery hat, didn't you?  
B Silly! She looked absolutely ridiculous!
- 6 A Oh dear! Have you had a bad day at work?  
B Bad! It was absolutely awful!

### T 8.7 See p65

### T 8.8 See p65

#### T 8.9 A night at the Oscars

I am absolutely amazed and delighted to receive this award. I am truly grateful to all those wonderful people who voted for me. It is extremely rare for a musical to win best movie, so this is a huge honour. None of us could have predicted 'Angel Voice' would be such an enormous success. It was an absolutely fantastic movie to do, not only because of all the brilliant people who worked on it, but also because of the incredible amount of stunning new talent we were able to develop. My special thanks go to the gifted writer Clarke Miller for the fascinating characters and hilarious script; to Michael Kellerman, the excellent musical director, for the marvellous songs and thrilling musical score; to the set and costume designers for their truly amazing creativity, and last but not least to my wife, Marcia, for her priceless support. I absolutely adore you all.

#### T 8.10 Simone

Well, it was when I was living in Cairo and ... erm ... it was in the middle of the summer, so, was it, it was extremely hot, – between 40 and 45 degrees centigrade, and ... erm ... stupidly we decided to

go dancing and ... er ... we went to this night club and we must have danced for hours and hours, ... erm ... and it was very hot inside the night club and we were sweating profusely, ... erm ... and ... er ... by the time we came out it was about five o'clock in the morning, and we decided, 'Ooh wouldn't it be a great idea to go to the pyramids to see the sunrise!' So we jumped in a taxi, and the taxi was also quite stuffy and hot, ... erm ... and we must have been starting to dehydrate at this point. Anyway, we got to the pyramids – and ... erm ... the sun was just starting to come up. And in, in Egypt, as soon as the sun comes up, the temperature rises dramatically, ... erm ... but we were so excited at seeing the pyramids that we decided just to, to go and walk and see. At this point, ... erm ... a man approached us and asked us if we wanted to borrow his motorbike, or hire his motorbike, ... erm ... and so we said yes. So my friend and I, we jumped onto the motorbike and raced out into the desert – only to find after about ten, 15 minutes, that the motorbike was ... erm ... rather old and suddenly it broke down. So we were miles from anywhere and ... erm ... had to push this motorbike to, to get back. I was the one at the back pushing the motorbike and of course ... erm ... I was using lots of energy, I was, ... erm ... losing a lot of fluid and, ... erm ... it was getting hotter and hotter. Anyway, we ended up having to walk back, ... erm ... to, to the village to give the motorbike back to the man. And by this time we were rather fed up and tired and very hot, so we decided to go home. By the time we got home, ... erm ... I did start to feel a bit strange, I had a bit of a headache and ... erm ... I decided to go to, straight to bed. Anyway, I woke up about half an hour later, feeling rather confused, and sick, a bit nauseous, and ... er ... I realized that ... erm ... my brain wasn't working properly and that in fact I probably had ... erm ... heat exhaustion. Anyway, it was a, it wasn't very pleasant, and –er, ah, it was a lesson in what not to do in ... er ... in such temperatures. I've never done that again. I always carry my rehydration salts with me.

### T 8.11 Anna

The time that I was very, very cold ... erm ... was a time when I was working in Russia, in a small town in central Russia and ... er ... I was going to see some friends who lived on the outskirts of the town, and they were worried about me getting lost and they said that they'd come to the tram stop to meet me. But I wanted to be independent, so I, I told them 'don't be silly, of course I'll find it'. And on the day of, of the visit, ... erm ... it was very, very cold, it might have been minus 30, but it might have been colder than that and ... er ... it was, it was so cold that at some of the tram stops and bus stops there were bonfires lit – special street fires ... erm ... to keep people warm and I think it was a day when the schools were closed, when the children didn't go to school because it was so cold. So I put on all the clothes that I had – all the scarves and jumpers, and, and I took the tram to the outskirts of the town where my friends lived and it was right, right way out to the end of the line and I, I got off the tram, which was heated, ... erm ... into this cold white world. And ... erm ... it was, it was so cold that if you ... when you breathed in, little balls of ice formed in your nostrils, you, you had to keep your ... erm ... a scarf over your mouth and nose. About a minute, two minutes after getting off the tram my, my ... er ... feet and hands were already hurting they were so cold. So I was walking around,



trying to find the, the flat, but it was completely anonymous this, this landscape ... erm ... and there were these huge snow-covered white blocks, these buildings, 15 or 16 floors, but they all looked exactly the same and I couldn't find the name of the, the street either, and it was very, very quiet and the, the tram had gone. Er ... and I began, actually, to get very frightened because I was feeling so, so cold. Erm ... my feet and hands had, had gone beyond hurting almost, I couldn't feel them any more. Erm ... it was quite difficult to breathe because of the icy scarf over my mouth and nose, ... erm ... and I, I just couldn't find where, where they lived, and I asked an old lady the way but my Russian wasn't good enough, she didn't understand me. And I was beginning to really, seriously panic, when suddenly in the distance I, I saw my friends. They'd come to find me and ... erm ... they took me home.

### T 8.12

- 1 We went dancing in temperatures of over 40°C, which was rather a stupid thing to do.
- 2 My friends were worried I'd get lost, which was understandable.
- 3 We visited the pyramids at sunrise, which was just amazing.
- 4 My nostrils actually froze, which is hard to believe.
- 5 This motorbike broke down in the desert, which was no laughing matter.
- 6 The old lady didn't understand a word I said, which is hardly surprising because my Russian's lousy.

### T 8.13

- 1 My sister has just given birth to twins.
- 2 Let's go away for the weekend. It's been ages since we've had a break.
- 3 I failed my driving test on just one thing – I turned left instead of right.
- 4 More than 50 people were injured in the motorway pile-up.
- 5 Look at the state of this room! There's stuff everywhere!
- 6 It's been pouring down for days.
- 7 The phone operator said I had to ring back later but he wouldn't give me a direct number.
- 8 Our dog went missing for three days and then she just turned up, as large as life.
- 9 The minister said they would reduce unemployment by 10 per cent in six months.
- 10 My mum has had a knee operation but it hasn't really helped her very much.

### T 8.14

- 1 How's your steak? Is it OK?
- 2 We were all going on holiday to Spain next week. We were really looking forward to it, but my father's been quite ill so we had to cancel it.
- 3 A Has Ann had the baby yet? It must be due any time now.  
B Oh, yes. Haven't you heard? She didn't have one baby. She had three! Tom's the father of triplets!
- 4 Mind your head as you come through this door. It's very low.
- 5 Do be careful. That bowl's really heavy.
- 6 Did you know that they eat horse-meat in some countries? And snails. And pigs' feet.
- 7 Look! Isn't that Peter over there, sitting on his own?
- 8 Tomorrow's test has been cancelled!

### T 8.15

- 1 A How's your steak? Is it OK?  
B Mmm! It's absolutely delicious! Just the way I like it.
- 2 A We were all going on holiday to Spain next week. We were really looking forward to it, but my father's been quite ill, so we had to cancel it.  
B Oh dear! What a shame! You must be so disappointed!
- 3 A Has Ann had the baby yet? It must be due any time now.  
B Oh, yes. Haven't you heard? She didn't have one baby. She had three! Tom's the father of triplets!  
A Wow! How amazing! Triplets! That'll keep them busy!
- 4 A Mind your head as you come through this door. It's very low.  
B Ouch! That really hurt!  
A I told you that would happen.
- 5 A Do be careful. That bowl's really heavy.  
B Whoops! I dropped it! Sorry about that! Don't worry. I'll get you a new one.
- 6 A Did you know that they eat horse-meat in some countries? And snails? And pigs' feet?  
B Yuck! That's disgusting! You wouldn't catch me eating that!
- 7 A Look! Isn't that Peter over there, sitting on his own?  
B Hey, Peter! Come over here and sit with us. Let's have a chat.
- 8 A Tomorrow's test has been cancelled.  
B Phew! What a relief! Thank goodness for that! I hadn't done any revising for it at all.



## UNIT 9

### T 9.1 An email to a friend

Dear Sally,  
I hope you don't mind me contacting you out of the blue like this. It's taken me a while to track you down, but now I have, thanks to the wonders of Facebook!

I don't know if you remember but we used to go to Allendales School together. You were the first person I got to know when I started there. We used to sit next to each other in class, but then the teachers made us sit apart because we were always giggling so much.

I remember we'd go back to your house after school every day and listen to music for hours on end. We'd get all the Guns N' Roses CDs as soon as they came out. Once we ate all the food in your fridge and your mother was furious.

Do you remember that time we nearly blew up the science lab? The teacher went crazy, but it wasn't our fault. We used to call him 'Homer Simpson' because he was small, fat, and bald. I still see Penny, and she's still as mad as ever. We meet up every now and again, and we'll always end up chatting about old times together. She's always talking about a school reunion. So if you're interested, drop me a line.

Looking forward to hearing back from you. It would be great to know how you're doing.

Your old schoolmate

Alison Makepeace

PS I'm not used to calling you Sally Davies! To me, you're still Sally Wilson!

### T 9.2

we used to go to school together we used to sit next to each other we were always giggling so much we'd go back to your house we used to call him 'Homer Simpson' I'm not used to calling you Sally Davies

### T 9.3

- 1 I got on very well with my mother. She was my best friend, still is. We had to get on, really. Dad left when I was three. I used to tell her everything, well, nearly everything. And she'd talk to me very openly, too. Sometimes she'd say to me 'Don't go to school today. Stay with me.' And we'd go out shopping or, or something like that. It's a wonder I had any education at all, the number of days I missed from school.
- 2 It was my dad who used to drive me mad. He was always telling me to have my hair cut and dress more smartly. My mum was much more lenient. She never really minded how I dressed. But she would get angry when I picked at food before she'd put it on the table. 'Get your hands off!' she'd say. But I was always so hungry. I had such a big appetite for such a small, weedy child – then at 16 I suddenly shot up – I'm 6ft 5" now!
- 3 My mum was always nagging me, telling me to get off the computer, turn off the TV, pick up my things, do my homework. She'd keep on and on and then she'd be all put out when I'd shut myself away in my room. I just needed some peace and quiet each day. She just didn't realise how hard it was for me at school, I wasn't very popular, you see – so I would really need some time out when I got home.
- 4 I have very fond memories of my childhood. To me it represented security. We used to do a lot together as a family. I remember walks, and picnics, and going for car rides on a Sunday afternoon. Every Friday when my Dad came home, he'd bring us each a treat, just something little. My mother used to say he was spoiling us, but why not? It didn't do us any harm.

### T 9.4

- 1 A You don't like your new teacher, do you?  
B Not a lot, but we're getting used to her.
- 2 A How can you get up at five o'clock in the morning?  
B No problem. I'm used to it.
- 3 A How come you know Madrid so well?  
B I used to live there.
- 4 A How are you finding your new job?  
B Difficult, but I'm getting used to it bit by bit.
- 5 A Do you read comics?  
B I used to when I was young, but not any more.
- 6 A You two argue so much. How can you live together?  
B After 20 years' marriage we're used to each other.

### T 9.5 A teacher to remember

1 Sean  
Funnily enough the teacher I'll never forget is my Latin and Greek teacher – you may think they're dry subjects – er dead languages but Mr Lang, the teacher, somehow used to make these dead languages seem dead easy. He looked the part – he was kind of traditional-looking – quite formal and serious. He'd always wear a dark green or dark brown suit and he had a long black



moustache. He'd been at the school for over 20 years so he must have been in his 50s I suppose. You'd think that everything about him was boring and serious, 'cos he never smiled or laughed, never, but somehow he was clear, interesting, and entertaining. He had a razor sharp wit, and there were jokes hidden in his words if you listened carefully – and we all did. I passed my exams but didn't study Latin or Greek at university. However, I did study philosophy – and that was a direct result of learning about the great philosophers, Aristotle, Socrates, Plato, from Mr Lang.

## 2 Samantha

My most memorable teacher, hmm! I think that would be Mrs Chapman. I was about 13 or 14 and she was our English and drama teacher. She was short and a bit plump, dumpy in fact, with mousy-brown hair. She looked like everybody's kind, middle-aged auntie but she wasn't very kind. She had a big loud voice and she used to like to get us to act out the plays we were studying and she'd shout 'speak up, speak up and think about the meaning of the words'. But what I remember most about her is her ruler. She had this wooden ruler and if anyone was looking sleepy or bored she'd poke them on the shoulder with this ruler and shout 'wake up girl' or 'boy'. Then one day she spotted someone asleep, fast asleep and snoring, at the back of the class. Mrs Chapman was sooo furious she slammed the ruler down on his desk and it broke in half. We were all scared stiff. She didn't throw the ruler away – after that, it was even sharper when she poked you in the back. Maybe her lessons helped me though – I'm a barrister now and when I have to speak in court Mrs Chapman's words ring in my ear: 'speak up, speak clearly girl!'

## 3 Rupert

I don't think I ever had a favourite teacher but I had a least favourite teacher and weirdly he was probably the most successful teacher I ever had. You see when I was at primary school I was really good at maths – I could do it all. But when I went to secondary school I had a succession of dismal maths teachers and by the time I took my exams at 16 I was absolutely hopeless. I failed miserably. And I needed to pass maths to get into university, so I had to retake it. This time with a very different teacher, Mr Biggs. I have no idea how old he was – just old – but you know when you're 16, 35 seems old. I'd say he was probably in his late 30s and big like his name with a huge booming voice. He was very sarcastic and it seemed to be his mission in life to embarrass his students and me particularly because I'd joined the class to do a resit. He was always getting me out to the front of the class to do sums on the board and he'd sneer if I got it wrong, which was most of the time. I hated him with a passion but actually his explanations were crystal clear and gradually over the year I improved. I got a really good pass in the end and got into a good university.

## 4 Charlotte

Well, one teacher I'll never forget is Miss Wilkinson. She taught chemistry and biology. I didn't like her subjects much, probably 'cos I wasn't much good at them. She seemed old to me but she was probably just in her early 30s and kind of tall and gangly. She drove this ancient mini and she always seemed too big for it. She had to crouch over the steering wheel. Anyway, the reason I remember her so well is because I think she fell for my dad. Really! You see he'd sometimes collect me from school and one day

there she was in her mini and she couldn't get it to start, so of course my dad, being the lovely gentleman he was, helped her. Miss Wilkinson was glowing with gratitude: 'Oh thank you, thank you Mr Wilson, so kind, so kind.' She went all weak and wobbly, not at all like she was when she was yelling at us in class. And then every time he came to collect me after that, somehow Miss Wilkinson would appear and she was always asking me about him: 'How's your kind father, Charlotte?' 'Just fine Miss Wilkinson, he and my mum are going to Paris this weekend.' I just made that up to see her reaction. My friends and I used to giggle about it. When I mentioned it to my dad he just laughed and said 'Don't be silly Charlotte, nobody would fancy an old bore like me.' But my mum raised an eyebrow.

## T 9.6

- 1 They live in this great big house in the centre of London.
- 2 I only made one tiny little mistake in my driving test, but I still failed.
- 3 Careful with the soup – it's boiling hot. Don't scald yourself.
- 4 It's freezing cold in here. Can't we put on the heating?
- 5 Do you like my car? It's brand new.
- 6 Don't worry. You won't wake the children. They're fast asleep.
- 7 I have a cold shower every morning. Then I feel wide awake.
- 8 A I'm fed up with this lesson.  
B Me too. I'm bored stiff.

## T 9.7

where/wear nose/knows wood/would war/wore through/threw

## T 9.8

- 1 My brother is crazy about Man. U. But I'm an Arsenal fan myself.  
We don't have air conditioning, just a ceiling fan. It's not enough.
- 2 Oh dear! We have a flat tyre and no spare wheel.  
I'm renting a flat near where I work.
- 3 'What's today's date?' 'The third.'  
I've got a date tonight. I'm going out with Carl.
- 4 He goes to the gym every day. He's very fit.  
The trousers are too small. They don't fit you.
- 5 It's not fair. Everyone else is allowed to stay out til midnight.  
She has beautiful fair hair and blue eyes.

## T 9.9 See p76

## T 9.10

- 1 A Why is Sunday the strongest day?  
B Because the others are weak days!
- 2 A Your battery's flat. That's why your car won't start.  
B Oh dear! What shape should it be?
- 3 A Why will you never starve in the desert?  
B Because of the sand which is (sandwiches) there.
- 4 A Waiter! What's wrong with this egg?  
B Don't ask me, sir. I only laid the table.
- 5 A What do you get when 5,000 strawberries try to go through a door at the same time?  
B I don't know. What do you get?  
A Strawberry jam!
- 6 A Waiter, this food tastes funny.  
B So, why aren't you laughing?
- 7 A What do you give to a sick lemon?  
B Lemon aid!

- 8 A What did one toilet say to the other?  
B You look a bit flushed.
- 9 A Why can't Cinderella play soccer?  
B Because she's always running away from the ball.

## T 9.11

### 1 Pat

If you ask me, this is a terrible idea. Firstly, good body image isn't something that you can teach. Secondly, schools don't have time to add another non-academic subject into their packed curriculum. Another thing is that teachers have enough to do and it's really down to the parents to try and develop self-esteem in their children. Personally, I've never worried too much about how I look, but that's not the point. The point I'm trying to make is that young people's education should be about qualifications for their future, not worrying about body image.

### 2 Ian

To tell you the truth, I haven't really thought about it. I suppose the problem is that there are lots of images of beautiful models out there in the media. But as far as I'm concerned, people come in all shapes and sizes. I don't see what's wrong with that. Actually, it would be a pretty boring world if we all looked the same, wouldn't it? And personality is what counts after all, and just trying to be happy. Anyway, as I was saying, I don't really feel strongly one way or the other about young people and their body image.

### 3 Helen

If you want my opinion, I think this is a really good idea. Many of today's teenagers are obsessed with the idea of physical perfection. Basically, they feel like an outsider if they look different in any way. As I understand it, this is true of boys as much as girls. But the main point is that the media and celebrity culture sells them an image of beauty which they will never achieve. What really worries me is that cosmetic surgery and eating disorders are going to become the norm for the next generation. In conclusion, I think that schools should play a greater role in developing teenagers' self-esteem.

## T 9.12 See p114



## UNIT 10

### T 10.1

- 1 She must have been very rich.
- 2 I had to do my homework.
- 3 I couldn't sleep because of the noise.
- 4 They can't have been in. There were no lights on.
- 5 I thought that was Jane but I might have been wrong.
- 6 You should have seen a doctor.
- 7 The train may have been late due to bad weather.

### T 10.2 The king in the car park

- A How was the theatre last night? What did you see?
- B We saw a Shakespeare – *Richard III*. It was fantastic! Fabulous acting. You know: 'A horse, a horse my kingdom for ...'
- A You saw *Richard III*? Do you know he's all over the news at the moment?
- B Why? He died over 500 years ago.



- A Yeah, and nobody knows where he was buried. It's a big mystery – at least it was a mystery because now they're pretty sure they've found his body.
- B Really?
- A Well not his body exactly – his skeleton. It was beneath a car park in Leicester.
- B Beneath a car park? You're kidding me. So King Richard could have died while parking his horse!
- A Ha ha! Not funny! No, seriously, they say the car park must have been built on what was once a church graveyard.
- B But how do they know the skeleton is Richard III?
- A Well, they know he was killed in 1485 in a battle near Leicester.
- B Yeah, the Battle of Bosworth Field.
- A Yeah, that's right – and tests showed that the man must have died around that time from battle wounds and that he was in his late 20s or 30s and ...
- B Yeah, I think Richard was in his early 30s when he died.
- A Also, the skeleton has a deformed spine so he would have been a hunchback.
- B Yes, and Richard was a hunchback. Well, at least he was in Shakespeare's play.
- A They can tell a lot from the skeleton and it's in really good condition, except that the feet are missing.
- B How come the feet are missing?
- A Oh they say builders might have chopped them off in the 16th century. Anyway, the archaeologists found some people in Canada who are descendants and they've done DNA tests which match.
- B I bet those people were surprised.
- A Yeah, I bet.
- B Who was Richard fighting in the battle? Was it Henry VIII?
- A No, it can't have been Henry VIII. I don't think he was born until the end of the 15th century – it must have been his father, Henry VII. My history's a bit rusty.
- B I think you're right. It would have been Henry VII. There've been a lot of Henrys, haven't there?
- A Yeah, but none since Henry VIII. Who knows – there might be a Henry IX one day.

### T 10.3

- When did Richard die?  
He must have died in the 15th century.
- What was he doing when he died?  
He could have been riding a horse. He must have been fighting.
- Was he buried in a car park?  
He can't have been buried in a car park.
- How old was he when he died?  
He may have been 32 or 33. He can't have been 40.
- What did they learn from his deformed spine?  
That he would have been a hunchback.
- Why were his feet missing?  
Builders in the 16th century might have chopped them off.
- How did the Canadians feel about the discovery?  
They must have been surprised and excited.
- Who was Richard fighting in the battle?  
He can't have been fighting Henry VIII. He would have been fighting Henry VII.

### T 10.4

- I did tell you about Joe's party. You can't have been listening.
- Thanks so much for all your help. I couldn't have managed without you.
- Flowers, for me! That's so kind, but really you shouldn't have.
- Come on! We're only five minutes late. The film won't have started yet.
- I don't believe that Kathy's going out with Mark. She'd have told me, I know she would.
- We raced to get to the airport on time, but we needn't have worried. The flight was delayed.
- We've got a letter here that isn't for us. The postman must have delivered it by mistake.
- You shouldn't have gone swimming in such rough sea. You could have drowned!

### T 10.5 See p80

### T 10.6

- R Hello?
- D Hi, can I speak to Robert Johnson, please?
- R This is Robert.
- D Hi, Bob! It's me, Donna.
- R Sorry – Donna who?
- D Donna Goldberg.
- R I'm sorry – I don't think I know any 'Donnas'.
- D You do, you do! We met on vacation – or 'holiday' as you say.
- R On holiday? Did we? Where was that?
- D In Greece. Me and my friend Marlene were staying in the same hotel.
- R Greece! Oh yes of course! Donna and Marlene from Wisconsin. That was years ago.
- D It was nearly ten years ago but Marlene and I still talk about it. We had a great time didn't we? You and your friend Alistair were such great guys.
- R Well, thank you. Er- yes, Alistair and I enjoyed it too. Well, what a surprise! Er- What are you up to these days?
- D Well, I'm here in London at the moment.
- R Here? What are you doing here?
- D Well, Marlene and I are on holiday together again and this time we're going round Europe – six countries.
- R Wow! Really? That's ambitious.
- D Yeah and we're beginning here in England so we wondered if we could come and visit. Maybe stay a couple of nights? It'd be great to catch up.
- R Erm ... well ... obviously er I'd love to see you both again but actually it's not really very ...
- D But you said we could visit if we were ever in London – and here we are!
- R Yes, I know we said that but Alistair lives in Scotland now and my flat isn't very big and my wife and ...
- D Bobby are you married now? That's so cool. When did you marry?
- R About four years ago, and we're about to move to a bigger place. We're expecting another baby.
- D Bob, I see, no worries. Marlene and I understand, new baby, new home.
- R I'm glad you understand. Maybe we could meet for a drink for old times' sake?
- D I'm not sure your wife would be too pleased.

- R Erm – maybe you're right. But it was nice to hear your voice again Donna. Love to Marlene and I'll tell Alistair that you got in touch. Enjoy your trip.
- D Thank you Robert. Have a nice life.
- R Thanks Donna. Same to you. Bye.

### T 10.7

- A That exam was totally impossible!  
B You can say that again! I couldn't answer a single question. I'm bound to have failed.
- A You might as well apply for the job, even though you're too young.  
B Yes, why not! After all, I've got nothing to lose. You never know, I might be just the person they're looking for.
- I know I shouldn't have eaten a whole tub of ice-cream but I just couldn't help it. I feel as fat as a pig now.
- A I'm going to tell her exactly what I think of her.  
B I wouldn't do that if I were you. You've no idea how she'll react. It could get really nasty.
- A You might have told me that Jackie and Dave had split up! I felt really stupid when I asked Jackie where they were going on holiday.  
B Sorry! I thought you knew. Everybody else does.
- A I think you should forget all about her and move on.  
B Believe me, I would if I could. But I just can't get her out of my mind. I think it must be love.
- A Oh no!
- A You should have been here yesterday! You'd have died laughing!  
B Why? What was so funny?  
A Well, Pedro was imitating the teacher, and he was so good, and then the teacher walked in!
- A Then I found out that Annie's been going out with ... guess who? Dave!  
B Huh! I could have told you that. It's common knowledge. Where have you been?
- I'd known this guy for five minutes when he asked me to marry him! I just couldn't believe it! Maybe he does the same to every girl he meets.
- A I could do with a break.  
B Me, too. I'm dying for a coffee. It feels like this lesson's been going on for ages.

### T 10.8

#### Jim, who ran away from his nurse, and was eaten by a lion

There was a boy whose name was Jim;  
His friends were very good to him.  
They gave him tea, and cakes, and jam,  
And slices of delicious ham,  
And read him stories through and through,  
And even took him to the zoo –  
But there it was the dreadful fate  
Befell him, I now relate.  
You know – at least you ought to know,  
For I have often told you so –  
That children never are allowed  
To leave their nurses in a crowd;  
Now this was Jim's especial foible,  
He ran away when he was able,  
And on this inauspicious day  
He slipped his hand and ran away!  
He hadn't gone a yard when – bang!  
With open jaws, a lion sprang,



And hungrily began to eat  
 The boy: beginning at his feet.  
 Now just imagine how it feels  
 When first your toes and then your heels,  
 And then by gradual degrees,  
 Your shins and ankles, calves and knees,  
 Are slowly eaten, bit by bit.  
 No wonder Jim detested it!  
 No wonder that he shouted 'Hi!'  
 The honest keeper heard his cry,  
 Though very fat, he almost ran  
 To help the little gentleman  
 'Ponto!' he cried, with angry frown  
 'Let go, sir! Down, sir! Put it down!'  
 The lion having reached his head  
 The miserable boy was dead!  
 When nurse informed his parents they  
 Were more concerned than I can say –  
 His mother, as she dried her eyes,  
 Said, 'Well – it gives me no surprise,  
 He would not do as he was told!'  
 His father, who was self-controlled  
 Bade all the children round attend  
 To James's miserable end,  
 And always keep a-hold of nurse  
 For fear of finding something worse.

### T 10.9

- 1 A How's the new job?  
 B OK, but I'm still getting used to it. My boss seemed very strict at first, but underneath it all she's very kind and generous. She understands the retail business very well, so she knows what she's doing.
- 2 C Can you help me to fix my computer? I can't open any of my files.  
 D Listen, you'd better accept the fact that your computer is ancient. It's been about to stop working for years. You can get a new one for about £500 these days.  
 C Are you joking?  
 D No, I'm perfectly serious.
- 3 E Pat's been unbearable lately. That promotion has made her feel more important than she is. She's been shouting at everyone. She's always spoken in a harsh and unkind way, but now she's upsetting everyone.  
 F I know. I'll have to talk to her honestly and openly.

### T 10.10

- 1 A How's the new job?  
 B OK, but I'm still finding my feet. My boss seemed very strict at first, but underneath it all she's got a heart of gold. She has a very good head for the retail business, so she knows what she's doing.
- 2 C Can you give me a hand to fix my computer? I can't open any of my files.  
 D Listen, you'd better face the fact that your computer is ancient. It's been on its last legs for years. You can get a new one for about £500 these days.  
 C Are you pulling my leg?  
 D No, I'm perfectly serious.
- 3 E Pat's been unbearable lately. That promotion has gone to her head. She's been shouting at everyone. She's always had a sharp tongue, but now she's upsetting everyone.  
 F I know. I'll have to have a heart-to-heart talk with her.



## UNIT 11

### T 11.1

- 1 It's raining *again*. I wish it wasn't.
- 2 I'm not going out tonight. I wish I was.
- 3 There's nothing good on TV. I wish there was.
- 4 I don't like my job. I wish I did.
- 5 My boyfriend and I split up last week. I wish we hadn't.
- 6 I know he won't call me. I wish he would.
- 7 I feel really depressed. I wish I didn't.
- 8 I can't talk to anyone about it. I wish I could.

### T 11.2

- 1 A Look, I know I shouldn't have parked here but I was only gone two minutes.  
 B I've already written the ticket.  
 A Surely you could cancel it if you wanted? It was literally one minute.  
 B One minute, two minutes. You can't park here, it's as simple as that.  
 A But I just had to dash into the chemist to collect a prescription for my sick grandmother. Supposing you cancelled it just this once?  
 B I don't care what you were doing. I can't cancel a ticket – it's more than my job's worth. You've got two weeks to pay.
- 2 A No, I can't possibly go out tonight. I shouldn't have gone out last night.  
 B Come on – we had a great time. It was one helluva party!  
 A I know it was.  
 B So, when's your exam?  
 A Tomorrow, nine o'clock. If only I hadn't left all my revision 'til the last minute.  
 B I wouldn't worry if I were you. You know you always do OK.  
 A There's always a first time.  
 B Good luck anyway.
- 3 A If only we could just fly off to that island.  
 B That would be fantastic. I'd sit on a beach and read all day.  
 A I'd just sleep forever. I can't remember a full night's sleep.  
 B Yeah. Sometimes I wish I'd never had kids. I mean, not really, but ...  
 A I know what you mean. No – you can't have an ice cream. I said NO!
- 4 A Brilliant shot Charlie! Well-done!  
 B Don't you wish you still played football Dad?  
 A Me? No. I was never any good. But you could have been a brilliant player if you'd wanted.  
 B Nah! I wasn't as good as Charlie. Aaah – oh nearly! YES!  
 A Yeah, he'll go far.
- 5 A Oh boy! What would you give to drive one of those?  
 B Which one would you choose if you had the money?  
 A That's one big 'if'! But ... mmm ... er ... if I won the lottery, I'd buy the Aston Martin.  
 B I wouldn't – I'd go for the Ferrari.  
 A In your dreams.

### T 11.3 See p88

### T 11.4

- 1 A Would it be OK if I left a bit early today? I have a dental appointment.  
 B No problem. Just tell Janet to cover for you.
- 2 A How's it going?  
 B OK. If all goes well, er we should be finished by Friday. Er, we've just got to put the finishing touches to the doors and windows.
- 3 A If you knew what I know, you'd never go out with him again.  
 B You're just jealous.
- 4 A Could I have a word with you if you've got a minute?  
 B Yeah, of course but I'm in a bit of a rush.  
 A Er, it's about that pay rise I was promised.
- 5 A Aren't you helping Jackie organize her wedding?  
 B I am. It's a nightmare. If anything went wrong, I'd never forgive myself.
- 6 A Win? What do you mean? If you ask me, they don't stand a chance.  
 B Don't you think so? They've been playing much better recently.  
 A Come on. They haven't won a match for months.
- 7 A We arrived on the Tuesday and ...  
 B It was a Thursday not a Tuesday if I remember rightly.  
 A Oh Tuesday, Thursday – the day doesn't matter. I'll just never forget the blue of the water and the white of the sand.
- 8 A Well, if the worst comes to the worst, we can always postpone it for a day or two.  
 B I'd rather not. I've just got a bit of a headache. The sea air will do me good.  
 A OK, if you're sure.
- 9 A You haven't made much progress, if any at all.  
 B What d'you mean? I've written five hundred words.  
 A Yeah, but you have to write ten thousand.
- 10 A I don't think much of Nancy's new boyfriend. He's really cold and arrogant.  
 B Actually, I don't think he's cold or arrogant. If anything, he's a bit shy.  
 A Shy?! Huh! You wouldn't say that if you'd seen him at Ned's party!

### T 11.5 See p89

### T 11.6

- 1 In any relationship you have to be prepared to give and take. You can't have your own way all the time.
- 2 I didn't buy much at the shops. Just a few odds and ends for the kids. Socks for Ben and hairbands for Jane.
- 3 I don't want to hear any ifs or buts. Just finish the job as soon as you can.
- 4 It's difficult to explain the ins and outs of the rules of cricket. It's so complicated.
- 5 'What have you got me for my birthday?'  
 'You'll have to wait and see.'
- 6 'Oh, no! The Burtons are coming for lunch! I hate their kids!'  
 'I'm sorry, but you'll just have to grin and bear it. It's only for an hour or so.'
- 7 OK, you can have it for £90. That's my final offer, take it or leave it.
- 8 Britain has lots of faults, of course, but by and large, it's a pleasant place to live.



**T 11.8**

**Presenter** Hello and welcome to 'Science for Life', your weekly update on what's happening in the world of science. On today's programme, we start with dreams, but not the age-old question of what they mean, but how we can influence them, and perhaps make them sweeter. Our tech reporter, Grace Miller, investigates.

**Reporter** The world of dreams has fascinated people for centuries. We now know that most of us dream several times a night, and of course some remember their dreams more clearly than others. But what if we could influence what we dream about and make them happier and always enjoyable? Is this 'science fact' or 'science fiction'? Well, it could become fact, thanks to a new app called Dream:ON. Dream:ON is the brainchild of the British psychologist, Richard Wiseman. It has already been downloaded by thousands of volunteers eager to find out if they can create the perfect dream.

So how does it work? Well, before going to sleep, you select from the app the type of dream you would like to have. Then you place your phone next to your head on the pillow. This is so that the app can monitor your sleep pattern. It monitors your movements until it senses that you are lying still. This indicates that you're in a period of REM (rapid eye movement) sleep, when dreaming is most likely to occur. It then quietly plays something called a 'soundscape'. This is a personalized series of sounds designed to help create your desired dream. It can be anything at all from birds singing and waves lapping on the shore, to city noises or the voices of celebrities. While the soundscape is playing, the app continues to monitor your movements and when the dream ends, it wakes you up with a gentle alarm and asks you to write a short description of your dream. The descriptions of the dreams are stored in a database called 'Dream Bank' to allow Professor Wiseman to assess the effectiveness of the app and continue his research. The app also allows you to tag the friends who appeared in your dreams via Facebook and Twitter.

This all might be your dream come true, or your worst nightmare, but there is a serious side to it. A national sleep survey found that 21% of respondents had trouble sleeping and 15% suffered from unpleasant dreams. Professor Wiseman said, 'Getting a good night's sleep and having pleasant dreams boosts people's productivity, and is essential for their psychological and physical wellbeing. Despite this, we know very little about how to influence dreams. This experiment aims to change that.' From some of the comments on Twitter, it looks like there have been mixed results, as you might expect. I haven't tried Dream:ON myself yet, but it's free to download so I might just give it a go tonight.

**Presenter** Well, it's thanks and sweet dreams to our reporter, Grace. We'll try and get an update on that research later in the year. Now moving away from dreams ...

**T 11.9**

1

Well, I tried it for a few nights last week, but it didn't seem to make much difference. Everything was more or less the same as before. To be honest, I'm quite a deep sleeper and I – I don't have many nightmares. I guess I'm lucky, but I don't tend to remember my dreams very clearly either.

2

What can I say other than, 'It worked!?' Maybe it was just a coincidence, so I guess I'll have to wait and see if it has any influence on my dreams in the future. The one that worked best was the 'Ocean View' soundscape. I had this really vivid dream about swimming in beautiful clear water, really deep into the ocean but without any breathing equipment. It was such a nice feeling when I woke up.

3

I tried it but it didn't work because my battery ran out! I should have kept my phone on its charger all night. But to be honest, I'm not sure I'd bother trying it again. A friend recommended it, but she's really into dream analysis and all that. You know, I don't think there's an app good enough out there to give me my perfect dream!

4

Hmm, not sure about that. An app to control your dreams sounds a bit weird. I wish developers would focus on software that really is useful. Like a map that has the correct streets in the correct place! Thousands of apps and I still have to ask for directions! It's time they stopped making silly software.

5

What an amazing idea! I've suffered from disrupted sleep and nightmares for ages. I wish I'd heard about this app before. I'll certainly give it a go. Anything that can help redirect my dreams is worth a try. I have a recurring nightmare of being chased through a dark wood. I always wake up just before I'm caught, but I'm left feeling stressed and exhausted.

6

A dream control app? What a bunch of nonsense! All you need for a good night's sleep is peace and quiet, so turn your phone off! So many people are surrounded by technology 24/7, it's no wonder they can't unwind. Don't get me wrong, mobile technology is a useful tool, but you shouldn't let it rule every part of your life.

**T 11.10**

- 1 **A** I could kick myself. As soon as I'd handed it in, I remembered what the answer was.  
**B** Oh, I hate it when that happens! But do you think you've still passed?
- 2 **A** Oh, I don't believe it! I've spent all morning trying to send this, and all I get is 'Ooops! Your message wasn't sent. Try again later'.  
**B** What a pain! Have you tried ringing the computer helpline?
- 3 **A** These instructions don't make any sense to me at all. If you can follow them, you're a genius.  
**B** Don't ask me! This flatpack stuff is a nightmare! I had exactly the same trouble trying to put up a bedside table.
- 4 **A** It's not fair. I'd been looking forward to watching it all day and then the phone goes and rings!  
**B** Typical! And who was it? Anyone interesting?

- 5 **A** How many times do I have to tell you? Take them off before you come into the house!  
**B** Give me a break! I was in a hurry. Anyway, they're only a bit muddy.
- 6 **A** This has gone beyond a joke. You promised you'd deliver it by Tuesday at the latest. Now you're saying next month!  
**B** I'm awfully sorry, sir. I'm afraid there's nothing I can do about it. It's out of my hands.
- 7 **A** I went away to think about it, and of course, when I went back it had been sold. I wish I'd just bought it there and then.  
**B** Oh, it's such a shame. It would have gone so well with your white jeans.
- 8 **A** What a waste of time! Ten minutes listening to music and 'All our lines are busy. Thank you for waiting'.  
**B** I know, it drives me mad. But worse still is that you *never* get to speak to a real person anyway!



**UNIT 12**

**T 12.1**

My grandfather, who's a widower, used to be a judge and when he retired the year before last, he decided to go on a sea cruise. He enjoyed the cruise very much indeed. He sailed all round the world and it sounded like a great experience. Anyway, the most interesting thing about this cruise was that he met an attractive, American widow – I think she's pretty rich as well. She comes from California. Well, my grandfather invited her to have dinner with him and they got on really well with one another. And would you believe it, my grandfather fell in love? No kidding! He says you can find love at any age, and the next thing we knew he'd asked her to marry him. Apparently, they were married by the captain of the ship. It's so romantic. The whole family's amazed, but we're all very happy for him 'cos he's been rather lonely since my grandmother died. Just hope I find love one day, like Grandpa.

**T 12.2**

- 1 I don't like cereal for breakfast.
- 2 Do any of your friends like dancing?
- 3 What are the people in your class like?
- 4 I've just sent my nephew £10 for his birthday.
- 5 Did you know Bob's training to be a vet and he doesn't even like animals?
- 6 Isn't your mother Scottish?
- 7 What do you think the most important thing in life is?
- 8 I bet you've told loads of girls that you love them.
- 9 It's very kind of you to offer but I can't take your car. You might want to use it this afternoon.
- 10 There was quite a crowd at your birthday party, wasn't there?

**T 12.3**

- 1 **A** I don't like cereal for breakfast.  
**B** Well, would you like an egg? A boiled egg and some toast?
- 2 **A** Do any of your friends like dancing?  
**B** What d'you mean *any*? All my friends like dancing. We go every Saturday night.



- 3 A What are the people in your class like?  
B They're great. Every person in my class is really friendly. We all get on really well together.
- 4 A I've just sent my nephew £10 for his birthday.  
B Well, I have five nieces, I gave £10 to each one for Christmas. Cost me a fortune.  
A I only have the one nephew at the moment. Thank goodness.
- 5 A Did you know Bob's training to be a vet and he doesn't even like animals?  
B I'd have thought that a love of animals was vital for a vet.  
A Me too. I think it's 'cos he wanted to be a doctor but he failed the exams.
- 6 A Isn't your mother Scottish?  
B In fact *both* my parents are Scottish. My father was born in Glasgow but he moved to London when he was eighteen.
- 7 A What do you think the most important thing in life is?  
B I think love is everything. If you can find true love you'll be happy forever.
- 8 A I bet you've told loads of girls that you love them.  
B This time it's different. The love I have for you is forever. I've never felt like this before.
- 9 A It's very kind of you to offer but I can't take your car. You might want to use it this afternoon.  
B Look, I have two cars. Borrow either one, I don't mind. I probably won't be using either anyway.
- 10 A There was quite a crowd at your birthday party, wasn't there?  
B Yeah, it was great to see everyone and I think they all had a good time.

#### T 12.4

- 1 What's that song you're singing?  
2 Did you hear that storm in the middle of the night?  
3 Mmm! These strawberries are delicious!  
4 Take those dirty shoes off! I've just cleaned in here.  
5 I can't stand this weather. It's really getting me down.  
6 Who was that man you were talking to this morning?  
7 Do you remember when we were young? Those were the days!  
8 Children have no respect for authority these days, do they?

#### T 12.5

- 1 A What was the meal like?  
B It was revolting, every bit as bad as you said it would be.
- 2 A Did you apologize to all the guests?  
B Each and every one of them. I felt I had to.
- 3 A They didn't all pass, did they?  
B All but three did. Seventeen out of twenty, that's not bad.
- 4 A Sorry, I only have 50p on me.  
B Don't worry. Every little helps you know.
- 5 A When do you think you'll get there?  
B All being well, we should be there about six.
- 6 A Do you fancy a quick pint?  
B If it's all the same to you, I'd rather not.

#### T 12.6

##### Dan

I'm 16 and these are meant to be the best years of my life, but to be honest I can't wait for them to be over. I can't see the point of spending hours in the classroom finding out about rivers in China or the French Revolution. A friend of my dad's often says to me, 'What are you doing with all your free time?' And I think, 'What free time?' After coursework, then homework, revision for tests and exams, plus my part-time job – I'm absolutely shattered. I know you need to do all this if you want to get into uni, but I'm not even sure that's for me. I haven't told my parents yet – it's their dream that I follow in dad's footsteps as a lawyer. Basically, I can't think of anything more awful. Years more studying, and debating details of the law, just doesn't grab me. What I really want to do is to be a theatre actor one day. English and drama are my best subjects and I'm always in the end-of-term plays. So, two more years of school, then I'd need to get a place on a drama course. But first I need to tell my parents I don't want to go into the law. Somehow I don't think they're going to like it.

##### Abi

Mummy says it will be fun cos ... erm ... there will be lots of other children to play with. But I don't want to go. I want to stay at home with Mummy and Granny.

Charlotte ... that's my sister ... goes there and she likes doing her work. But she's more older than me. She's seven and I'm only four. And ... I got a kitten for my birthday, he's called Fluffy, and he'll miss me 'cos we're always playing and things. I don't want to go at all.

##### Derek

So, it's my last week in the office. I've finally got used to the idea now but when they told me I was on the redundancy list, it hit me like a ton of bricks. I've been here over 30 years. Still, I'm trying to see it as a new opportunity – not the easiest thing in your mid-fifties. I'm setting up a small business with a friend – furniture design. I've always made chairs, tables and stuff as a hobby, so why not give it a go? You never know, we could be the next big thing.

##### Jilly

I never thought this day would come. Twenty-three and I've just started my first proper job – with my own desk, and phone, and even my name on the door! It's a shared office, of course, but you can't have everything! After being unemployed for two years since I left college, it feels a bit like a dream. I keep thinking the office manager is going to come over to my desk and say, 'What are you doing here? You don't work for us!'. But it hasn't happened yet.

You know, I was so nervous on the first day that I didn't move from my desk all morning. Then my workmates invited me to join them for lunch, which helped to break the ice. But it feels like there's so much to learn. My first big challenge is to present some design ideas for an advertising campaign. It's for washing powder of all things. I did a course in fashion so it isn't really my area, but a job's a job. I'm hoping that I can move back to the world of fashion once I've got a bit of work experience here. I'd like to move out from my mum and dad's place soon, too. They've been brilliant supporting me, but I really need to stand on my own two feet now.

##### Frances

I always think the word 'retired' sounds so negative ... like you're sitting passively in your armchair and waiting for someone to bring you a nice cup of tea! Yes, I gave up full-time work years ago, but I didn't give up on life! And since I stopped, I've been busier than ever. I really wanted the extra time I had to count for something. Er ... so many ladies of my age somehow ... disappear. Oh, they go for lunch, or have their hair done, but they don't really do anything ambitious. Maybe I've been a bit selfish but I wanted to still have challenges and ambitions. So, my first challenge was to go travelling on my own. I started just in Europe, in familiar territory, just around Italy and ... and Greece. And then I got the bug, and I was off to South America and the Caribbean, and then Japan and Indonesia. All my life, I'd organized family holidays and gone on business trips with my ex-husband. I never realized what a chore it was until I went on my own. Oh, it's marvellous to be able to just follow my nose around a city without worrying about other people – ooh, heaven.

##### Nat and Louis

N Well, we picked up the keys yesterday but we haven't moved all our stuff in yet. We've got all the basics in, you know, the beds, sofa and chairs, ...

L And the TV.

N Yes, Louis' flat-screen TV is definitely in place. But all our personal stuff is still in boxes. The thing is we've moved around so much since we got married, we've never managed to get things in their proper place. It's such a pain!

L That's right. We rented a tiny flat when we first got married. Then when we had the twins in our late twenties, we couldn't afford a two-bedroomed place, so we went to live with my mum for a while. That was great, 'cos she had a big old house with a huge garden, but then she had to downsize when she retired ...

N Yeah, we thought about trying to rent again but everything in our area was so expensive. In the end my parents said, 'Just come and stay with us.' So that's what we did so we could save to get a mortgage. But it took us ages to get the deposit together. I never thought I'd have to wait until the age of 35 before I owned my own home.

L Nat, darling, we don't own it, the bank do.

N Yes, well, you know what I mean. All I want to do is get all our bits and pieces into the new place and make it feel like home. The twins are so excited.



**T 12.7**

- 1 A Can't believe it. I failed again.  
B Never mind. You'll have better luck next time.  
A But that was the second time.  
B They say the best drivers pass on the third try.
- 2 A Come on! Get up! Get a life!  
B What'd you mean?  
A Well, it's high time you did something other than watch TV soaps all day.  
B Like what?  
A I dunno. Travel, see the world. See life.  
B Boring.  
A Oh, I give up. Be a couch potato if that's what you want.
- 3 A Oh no! We've missed it. It must have left dead on time.  
B I thought we might just get it.  
A What do we do now? There isn't another until 1 o'clock.  
B That's nearly two hours to kill!  
A More shopping?  
B Not on your life. I'm shopped-out! Let's just get a coffee. There's a café on platform 1.
- 4 A How's it going?  
B Well, they've finished at last but not before time – only four weeks late.  
A And how much is it all going to cost?  
B We haven't had the final bill yet.  
A Well, you can bet your life it'll be more than they estimated.  
B I know. We were going to have the kitchen decorated as well, but enough's enough for the time being.  
A Ahh.
- 5 A How come Dave has such a cushy life? He never seems to do any work.  
B Didn't you know? He won the lottery.  
A You're kidding! I had no idea. I do the lottery every week and never win a thing.  
B Me neither. That's life.

**T 12.8 No Time To Think**

by Paul Anthony

No time to think, no time for dreams  
 No time for anything it seems.  
 No time to stop, no time to waste,  
 No time for anything but haste.  
 No time to wonder at the snow,  
 No time to watch our children grow.  
 But time enough to race about  
 And time enough to scream and shout.  
 And time enough to rush, rush, rush,  
 And time enough to push, push, push.  
 But no time to care or to smile,  
 No time to ramble for a while.  
 No time to sit, no time to stand,  
 No time to shake you by the hand.  
 No time to stop, no time to blink  
 But most of all no time to think.

**T 12.9**

- 1 A Did you see the match last night?  
B No, but apparently it was a good game. We won, didn't we?  
A Actually, it was a draw, but it was really exciting.
- 2 A What do you think of Claire's new boyfriend?  
B Personally, I can't stand him. I think he'll dump her like all the rest. However, that's her problem, not mine.  
A Oh, poor old Claire! She always picks the wrong ones, doesn't she? Anyway, we'll see soon enough.
- 3 A I don't know how you can afford to buy all those fabulous clothes!  
B Hopefully, I'm going to get a bonus this month. My boss has promised. After all, I did earn the company over £100,000 last year. Basically, I deserve it.
- 4 A She said some terrible things to me. I hate her!  
B All the same, I think you should apologize to her. If you ask me, you lose your temper too easily. You're being very childish. It's time you both grew up!  
A What?! I never thought I'd hear you speak to me like that.  
B Honestly, I'm not taking sides. I just think you should make up.
- 5 A So, Billy. You say that this is the last record you're ever going to make?  
B Definitely.  
A But surely you realize how upset your fans are going to be?  
B Obviously, I don't want to hurt anyone, but basically I'm fed up with pop music. I'd like to do something else. Ideally, I'd like to get into films.



# Grammar Reference

## UNIT 1

### 1.1 The tense system

There are three classes of verbs in English: auxiliary verbs, modal verbs, and full verbs.

#### 1 Auxiliary verbs

The auxiliary verbs are *be*, *do*, and *have*.

##### *be*

- 1 *Be* is used with verb + *-ing* to make continuous verb forms.

*You're lying.* (present)

*They were reading.* (past)

*I've been swimming.* (present perfect)

*We'll be having dinner at eight o'clock.* (future)

*You must be joking!* (infinitive)

- 2 *Be* is used with the past participle to make the passive.

*These books are printed in China.* (present)

*Where were you born?* (past)

*My phone's been stolen.* (present perfect)

*The city had been destroyed.* (past perfect)

*This work should be done soon.* (infinitive)

##### *do*

- 1 *Do/does/did* are used in the Present Simple and the Past Simple.

*Do you smoke?* (question)

*She doesn't understand.* (negative)

*When did they arrive?* (question)

- 2 *Do/does/did* are used to express emphasis when there is no other auxiliary.

*I'm not interested in sport, but I do like tennis.*

*'If only she had a car!' 'She does have a car!'*

*'Why didn't you tell me?' 'I did tell you!'*

##### *have*

*Have* is used with the past participle to make perfect verb forms.

*Have you ever tried sushi?* (present)

*My car had broken down before.* (past)

*I'll have finished soon.* (future)

*I'd like to have met Napoleon.* (infinitive)

*Having had lunch, we tidied up.* (participle)

##### *have and have got*

- 1 *Have* and *have got* are both used to express possession in the present.

*Do you have* any brothers or sisters?

*Have you got*

Yes, I do. I have two brothers.

I have. I've got

- 2 *Have to* can be replaced with *have got to* for present obligation.

*Do you have to* go now?

*Have you got to*

Yes, I do. I have to catch the bus.

I have. I've got to

- 3 Only forms of *have* (not *have got*) are used in all other tenses.

*I had my first car when I was 19.*

*I've had this car for two years.*

*I'll have a strawberry ice-cream, please.*

*I'd had three cars by the time I was 20.*

*I'd like to have a dog.*

*He loves having a sports car.*

- 4 *Have* (not *have got*) is used in many expressions.

*have breakfast*      *have a bath*

*have a party*      *have a good time*

*have fun*      *have a word with someone*

- 5 *Have got* is generally more informal. It is used more in spoken English than in written English. However, they are often interchangeable.

*Have* with the *do/does* forms is more common in American English.

#### Other uses of auxiliary verbs

- 1 In question tags.

*It's cold today, isn't it?*

*You don't know Amelia, do you?*

*You haven't been to China, have you?*

- 2 In short answers. *Yes* or *No* alone can sound abrupt.

*'Are you hungry?' 'No, I'm not.'*

*'Do you like jazz?' 'Yes, I do.'*

*'Did you have a nice meal?' 'Yes, we did.'*

*'Has she seen the mess?' 'No, she hasn't.'*

- 3 In reply questions. These are not real questions. They are used to show that the listener is paying attention and is interested. They are practised on p29.

*'The restaurant was awful.' 'Was it? What a pity.'*

*'I love hamburgers.' 'Do you? I hate them.'*

*'I've bought you a present.' 'Have you? How kind!'*

#### 2 Modal auxiliary verbs

These are the modal auxiliary verbs.

can	could	may	might	will	would
shall	should	must	ought to	need	

They are auxiliary verbs because they 'help' other verbs. They are different from *be*, *do*, and *have* because they have their own meanings.

*He must be at least 70.* (= probability)

*You must try harder.* (= obligation)

*Can you help me?* (= request)

*She can't have got my text.* (= probability)

*I'll help you.* (= willingness)

*(Ring) That'll be the postman.* (= probability)

Modal auxiliary verbs are dealt with in Units 7 and 10.

#### 3 Full verbs

Full verbs are all the other verbs in the language.

The verbs *be*, *do*, and *have* can also be used as full verbs with their own meanings.

*Have you been to school today?*

*I want to be an engineer.*

*I do a lot of business in Russia.*

*The holiday did us a lot of good.*

*They're having a row.*

*Have you had enough to eat?*



## 1.2 English tense usage

English tenses have two elements of meaning: time and aspect.

### Time

- 1 The time referred to is usually obvious from the context.  
*English people **drink** tea.* (all time)  
*Shh! I'm **watching** this programme!* (now)  
*I'll **see** you later.* (future)  
*I **went** out with Jenny last night.* (past)
  - 2 Sometimes a present tense form can refer to the future.  
*I'm **going** out tonight.* (Present Continuous for near future)  
*The train **leaves** at 10.00 tomorrow.* (Present Simple for a timetable)  
*If you **see** Peter, say hello from me.* (Present Simple in a subordinate clause)
  - 3 Sometimes a past tense form can refer to the present.  
*I wish I **could** help you, but I can't.*
- This use of unreal tense usage is dealt with in Unit 11.

### The simple aspect

- 1 The simple aspect describes an action or fact that is seen to be complete or permanent, often an action or event that happens repeatedly and consistently.  
*The sun **rises** in the east.* (= repeated)  
*When I've **read** the book, I'll lend it to you.* (= complete)  
*She **has** red hair.* (= permanent)  
*He always **wore** a suit.* (= a habit)  
*It **rained** every day of our holiday.* (= the whole two weeks)  
*This shop **will close** at 7.00 this evening.* (= a fact)
- 2 Remember the verbs that rarely use the continuous aspect. This is because they express states that are seen to be permanent and not subject to frequent change.

Verbs of the mind	know understand believe think mean
Verbs of emotions	love hate like prefer care
Verbs of possession	have own belong
Certain other verbs	cost need contain depend

- 3 The simple aspect expresses a completed action. For this reason we must use the simple, not the continuous, if the sentence contains a number that refers to 'things done'.  
*She's **written** three letters this morning.*  
*I **drink** ten cups of tea a day.*  
*He **read** five books while he was on holiday.*

Simple tenses are dealt with further in Units 2, 3, and 5.

### The continuous aspect

- 1 The continuous aspect expresses the ongoing nature of an activity. We are aware of the passing of time between the beginning and the end of the activity. The activity is not permanent.  
*I'm **staying** with friends until I find a flat.* (= temporary)  
*What **are** you **doing** on your hands and knees?* (= in progress)  
*I've **been learning** English for years.* (And I still am.)  
*Don't phone at 8.00. We'll **be eating**.* (= in progress)
- 2 Because the activity is seen in progress, it can be interrupted.  
*We **were walking** across a field when we were attacked by a bull.*  
*'Am I **disturbing** you?' 'No. I'm just **doing** the ironing.'*
- 3 The activity may not be complete.  
*I **was writing** a report on the flight home.* (I didn't finish it.)  
*He **was drowning**, but we saved him.* (He didn't die.)  
*Who's **been drinking** my beer?* (There's some left.)

- 4 The action of some verbs, by definition, lasts a long time, for example, *live, work, play*. The continuous gives these actions limited duration and makes them temporary.  
*Hans **is living** in London while he's **learning** English.*  
*I'm **working** as a waiter until I go to university.*  
*Italy **have been playing** well recently. Maybe they'll win the World Cup.*
- 5 The action of some other verbs lasts a short time, for example, *lose, break, cut, hit, crash*. They are often found in the simple.  
*I **lost** all my money.*      *I've **crashed** your car. Sorry.*  
*She's **cut** her finger.*      *He **hit** me.*

In the continuous, the action of these verbs seems longer or habitual.

*I've **been cutting** the grass.* (= for hours)  
*He **was hitting** me.* (= again and again)

### Note

We cannot say a sentence such as *\*I've been crashing your car* because it suggests an activity that was done deliberately and often. Continuous tenses are dealt with further in Units 2, 3, and 5.

### The perfect aspect

The perfect aspect expresses two ideas.

- 1 The action is completed before another time.  
***Have** you ever **been** to America?* (= some time before now)  
*When I arrived, Peter **had left**.* (= some time before I arrived)  
*I'll **have finished** the report by 10.00.* (= some time before then)
- 2 The exact time of the verb action is not important. The perfect aspect refers to indefinite time.  
***Have** you **seen** my wallet anywhere? I've **lost** it.* (= before now)  
*We'll **have arrived** by this evening.* (= before this evening)  
The exception to this is the Past Perfect, which can refer to definite time.  
*I recognized him immediately. I **had met** him in 1992 at university.*

Perfect tenses are dealt with further in Units 2, 3, and 5.

### Active and passive

- 1 Passive sentences move the focus of attention from the subject of an active sentence to the object.  
***Shakespeare wrote** Hamlet in 1599.*  
***Hamlet, one of the great tragedies, was written** in 1599.*
- 2 In most cases, *by* and the agent are omitted in passive sentences. This is because the agent is not important, isn't known, or is understood.  
***Kedgerie is made with rice and fish.***  
***This house was built in the 17th century.***  
***The car will be cleaned before it's returned.***
- 3 Sometimes we prefer to begin a sentence with what is known, and end a sentence with what is 'new'. In the passive, the 'new' can be the agent of the active sentence.  
*'What a lovely painting!' 'Yes. It **was painted by Canaletto**.'*
- 4 In informal language, we often use *you* or *they* to refer to people in general or to no person in particular. In this way we can avoid using the passive.  
***You can buy anything in Harrods.***  
***They're building a new airport soon.***
- 5 There are many past participles that are used more like adjectives.  
*I'm very **impressed** by your work.*  
*You must be **disappointed** with your exam results.*  
*I'm **exhausted**! I've been on my feet all day.*

Passive sentences are dealt with further in Unit 3.



## UNIT 2

### ► Introduction to the Present Perfect

- 1 Many languages have a past tense to refer to past time, and a present tense to refer to present time. English has these, too, but it also has the Present Perfect, which relates past actions to the present.
- 2 The use of the Past Simple roots an action in the past, with no explicit connection to the present. When we come across a verb in the Past Simple, we want to know *When?*
- 3 The use of the Present Perfect always has a link with the present. When we come across a verb in the Present Perfect, we want to know how this affects the situation now.
- 4 Compare these sentences.

*I lived in Rome.* (But not any more.)

*I've lived in Rome, Paris, and New York.* (I know all these cities now.)

*I've been living in New York for ten years.* (And I'm living there now.)

*She's been married three times.* (She's still alive.)

*She was married three times.* (She's dead.)

*Did you see the Renoir exhibition?* (It's finished now.)

*Have you seen the Renoir exhibition?* (It's still on.)

*Did you see that programme on TV?* (I'm thinking of the one that was on last night.)

*Did you enjoy the film?* (Said as we're leaving the cinema.)

*Have you enjoyed the holiday?* (Said near the end of the holiday.)

*Where have I put my glasses?* (I want them now.)

*Where did I put my glasses?* (I had them a minute ago.)

*It rained yesterday.* (= past time)

*It's been snowing.* (There's snow still on the ground.)

### Present Perfect Simple and Continuous

See the introduction to the perfect aspect and the continuous aspect in Unit 1.

Present Perfect Simple and Continuous have three main uses.

#### 1 Unfinished past

The verb action began in the past and continues to the present. It possibly goes on into the future, as well.

*We've lived in this house for 20 years.*

*Sorry I'm late. Have you been waiting long?*

*I've been a teacher for five years.*

*I've been working at the same school all that time.*

#### Notes

- There is sometimes little or no difference between the simple and the continuous.  
*I've played*  
*I've been playing tennis since I was a kid.*
- The continuous can sometimes suggest a more temporary situation. The simple can sound more permanent.  
*I've been living with a host family for six weeks.*  
*The castle has stood on the hill overlooking the sea for centuries.*
- Certain verbs, by definition, suggest duration, for example, *wait, rain, snow, learn, sit, lie, play, stay*. They are often found in the continuous.  
*It's been raining all day.*  
*She's been sitting reading for hours.*
- Remember that state verbs rarely take the continuous.  
*I've known Joan for years.* \**I've been knowing*  
*How long have you had that car?* \**have you been having*  
*I've never understood why she likes him.* \**I've never been understanding*

#### 2 Present result

The verb action happened in the past, usually the recent past, and the results of the action are relevant now.

*You've changed. What have you done to yourself?*

*I've lost some weight.*

*I've been doing some exercise.*

*I'm covered in mud because I've been gardening.*

In this use, the simple emphasizes the completed action. The continuous emphasizes the repeated or ongoing activities over a period of time.

#### Notes

- Certain verbs, by definition, suggest a short action, for example, *start, find, lose, begin, stop, break, die, decide, cut*. They are more often found in the simple.  
*We've decided to get married.*  
*I've broken a tooth.*  
*I've cut my finger.*  
In the continuous, these verbs suggest a repeated activity.  
*I've been stopping smoking for years.*  
*You've been losing everything lately. What's the matter with you?*  
*I've been cutting wood.*
- The use of the simple suggests a completed action.  
*I've painted the bathroom.*  
The use of the continuous suggests a possibly incomplete action.  
*I'm tired because I've been working.* (Finished? Not finished?)  
*Someone's been eating my chocolates.* (There are some left.)
- The continuous can be found unqualified by any further information.  
*I'm wet because I've been swimming.*  
*We're tired because we've been working.*  
*'Why are you red?' 'I've been running.'*  
The simple sounds quite wrong in this use.  
\**I've swum.* \**We've worked.* \**I've run.*
- Sometimes there is little difference between the Past Simple and the Present Perfect.  
*Where did you put my keys?*  
*have you put*
- American English is different from British English. In American English, these sentences are correct.  
*Did you hear the news? The President resigned!*  
*Did you do your homework yet?*  
*Your father just called you.*  
*I had breakfast already.*

#### 3 Indefinite past

The verb action happened at an unspecified time in the past. The actual time isn't important. We are focusing on the experience at some time in our life.

*Have you ever taken any illegal drugs?*

*She's never been abroad.*

*Have you ever been flying in a plane when it's hit an air pocket?*

#### Note

- Notice these two sentences.  
*She's been to Spain.* (At some time in her life.)  
*She's gone to Spain.* (And she's there now.)  
The first is an example of indefinite past.  
The second is an example of present result.



## UNIT 3

### Narrative tenses

#### Past Simple and Present Perfect

See the introduction to the perfect aspect and the simple aspect in Grammar Reference Unit 2. The Past Simple differs from all three uses of the Present Perfect.

- 1 The Past Simple refers to **finished past**.

*Shakespeare **wrote** plays.* (He's dead.)

*I've **written** short stories.* (I'm alive.)

- 2 There is **no present result**.

*I **hurt** my back.* (But it's better now.)

*I've **hurt** my back.* (And it hurts now.)

- 3 It refers to definite past.

*I saw him **last night**.  
**two weeks ago**.  
**on Monday**.  
**at 8.00**.*

Compare this with the indefinite adverbials found with the Present Perfect.

*I've seen him **recently**.  
**before**.  
**since January**.*

*I haven't seen him **yet**.  
**for months**.*

*I've **never** seen him.  
**just***

#### Note

Even when there is no past time adverbial, we can 'build' a past time in our head.

***Did** you **have** a good journey?* (The journey's over. You're here now.)

*Thank you for supper. It **was** lovely.* (The meal is finished.)

*Where **did** you **buy** that shirt?* (when you were out shopping the other day.)

#### Past Simple

The Past Simple is used:

- 1 to express a finished action in the past.  
*Columbus **discovered** America in 1492.*
- 2 to express actions which follow each other in a story.  
*I **heard** voices coming from downstairs, so I **put on** my dressing-gown and **went** to investigate.*
- 3 to express a past state or habit.  
*When I was a child, we **lived** in a small house by the sea. Every day I **walked** for miles on the beach with my dog.*

This use is often expressed with *used to*.

*We **used to** live ... I **used to** walk ...*

See Unit 9 for more information on *used to*.

See Unit 11 for information on the Past Simple used for hypothesis.

#### Past Continuous

See the introduction to the continuous aspect in Grammar Reference Unit 2.

The Past Continuous is used:

- 1 to express an activity in progress before and probably after a time in the past.  
*I **was** phoned at 4.00, but there was no reply. What **were** you **doing**?*
- 2 to describe a past situation or activity.  
*The cottage **was** **looking** so cosy. A fire **was** **burning** in the grate, music **was** **playing**, and from the kitchen **were** **coming** the most delicious smells.*

- 3 to express an interrupted past activity.

*I **was** **having** a bath when the phone rang.*

- 4 to express an incomplete activity in the past.

*I **was** **reading** a book during the flight. (But I didn't finish it.)*

*I **watched** a film during the flight. (the whole film)*

- 5 to express an activity that was in progress at every moment during a period of time.

*I **was** **working** all day yesterday.*

*They **were** **fighting** for the whole of the holiday.*

#### Notes

- The Past Simple expresses past actions as simple, complete facts. The Past Continuous gives past activities time and duration.

*'What did you do last night?'*

*'I **stayed** at home and **watched** the football.'*

*'I phoned you last night, but there was no reply.'*

*'Oh, I **was** **watching** the football and I didn't hear the phone. Sorry.'*

- Notice how the questions in the Past Continuous and Past Simple refer to different times.

*When we arrived, Jan **was** ironing. She **stopped** ironing and made some coffee.*

*What **was** she **doing** when we arrived? She **was** ironing.*

*What **did** she **do** when we arrived? She **made** some coffee.*

#### Past Perfect

See the introduction to the perfect aspect and the continuous aspect in Grammar Reference Unit 2.

The Past Perfect is used to look back to a time in the past and refer to an action that happened before then.

*She **was** crying because her dog **had** **died**.*

*I arrived to pick up Dave, but he **had** already **left**.*

*Keith **was** fed up. He'd **been** **looking** for a job for months, but he'd **found** nothing.*

#### Notes

- The continuous refers to longer actions or repeated activities. The simple refers to shorter, complete facts.

*He'd **lost** his job and his wife **had** **left** him. Since then he'd **been** **sleeping** rough, and he **hadn't** **been** **eating** properly.*

- The Past Perfect can refer to definite as well as indefinite time.

*I **knew** his face immediately. I'd first met him **in October 1993**. (= definite)*

*I recognized her face. I'd seen her somewhere **before**. (= indefinite)*

#### Past Perfect and Past Simple

- 1 Verbs in the Past Simple tell a story in chronological order.

*John **worked** hard all day to prepare for the party. Everyone **had** a good time. Even the food **was** all right. Unfortunately, Andy **upset** Peter, so Peter **left** early. Pat **came** looking for Peter, but he **wasn't** there.*

*It **was** a great party. John **sat** and **looked** at all the mess. He **felt** tired. It **was** time for bed.*

- 2 By using the Past Perfect, the speaker or writer can tell a story in a different order.

*John sat and looked at all the mess. It **had been** a great party, and everyone **had had** a good time. Even the food **had been** all right. Unfortunately, Andy upset Peter, so Peter left early. Pat came looking for Peter, but he'd already gone.*

*John felt tired. He'd **been** **working** all day to prepare for the party. It was time for bed.*

#### Note

For reasons of style, it is not necessary to have every verb in the Past Perfect.

*... Andy upset Peter ... Peter left ...*

Once the time of 'past in the past' has been established, the Past Simple can be used as long as there is no ambiguity.



## Time clauses

- 1 We can use time conjunctions to talk about two actions that happen one after the other. Usually the Past Perfect is not necessary in these cases, although it can be used.  
*After I'd **had/had** a bath, I went to bed.*  
*As soon as the guests **left/had left**, I started tidying up.*  
*I sat outside until the sun **had gone/went** down.*
- 2 The Past Perfect can help to make the first action seem separate, independent of the second, or completed before the second action started.  
*When I **had read** the paper, I threw it away.*  
*We stayed up until all the beer **had gone**.*
- 3 Two verbs in the Past Simple can suggest that the first action led into the other, or that one caused the other to happen.  
*When I **heard** the news, I **burst** out crying.*  
*As soon as the alarm **went off**, I **got up**.*
- 4 The Past Perfect is more common with *when* because it is ambiguous. The other conjunctions are more specific, so the Past Perfect is not so essential.  
*As soon as all the guests **left**, I tidied the house.*  
*Before I **met** you, I **didn't know** the meaning of happiness.*  
*When I **opened** the door, the cat jumped out.*  
*When I'd **opened** the mail, I made another cup of tea.*  
See Unit 11 for information on the Past Perfect used for hypothesis.

## UNIT 4

### 4.1 Questions

#### Question forms

Notice these question forms.

- Subject questions with no auxiliary verb  
*Who **broke** the window?*  
*What **happens** at the end of the book?*
- Questions with prepositions at the end  
*Who **is** your email **from**?*  
*What **are** you talking **about**?*
- Question words + noun/adjective/adverb  
*What **sort** of music **do** you like?*  
*How **big** is their new house?*  
*How **fast** does your car go?*
- Other ways of asking *Why*?  
*What **did** you do that for?*  
*How **come** you got here before us?*  
*How come ...?* expresses surprise. Notice that there is no inversion and no *do/does/did* in this question form.

#### what and which

- 1 *What* and *which* are used with nouns to make questions.  
*What **size** shoes **do** you take?*  
*Which **of these** curries **is** the hottest?*
- 2 Sometimes there is no difference between questions with *what* and *which*.  
*What/Which **is** the biggest city in your country?*  
*What/Which **channel** **is** the match on?*
- 3 We use *which* when the speaker has a limited number of choices in mind.  
*There's a blue one and a red one. Which **do** you want?*  
We use *what* when the speaker is not thinking of a limited number of choices.  
*What **car** **do** you drive?*

## Asking for descriptions

- 1 *What is X like?* means *Give me some information about X because I don't know anything about it.*  
*What's your capital city **like**?*  
*What **are** your parents **like**?*
- 2 *How is X?* asks about a person's health and happiness.  
*How's your mother **these days**?*  
Sometimes both questions are possible. *What ... like?* asks for objective information. *How ...?* asks for a more personal reaction.  
*'What was the party **like**?' 'Noisy. Lots of people. It went on till three.'*  
*'How was the party?' 'Brilliant. I danced all night. Met loads of great people.'*  
*How was your journey?*  
*How's your new job?*  
*How's your meal?*

## Indirect questions

There is no inversion and no *do/does/did* in indirect questions.

*I wonder what she's doing. \*I wonder what **is** she doing.*  
*I don't know where he lives. \*I don't know where **does** he live.*  
*Tell me when the train leaves.*  
*I didn't understand what she was saying.*  
*I've no idea why he went to India.*  
*I'm not sure where they live.*  
*He doesn't know whether he's coming or going.*

### 4.2 Negatives

#### Forming negatives

- 1 We make negatives by adding *not/n't* after the auxiliary verb. If there is no auxiliary verb, we add *do/does/did*.  
*I **haven't** seen her for ages.*  
*It **wasn't** raining.*  
*You **shouldn't** have gone to so much trouble.*  
*We **don't** like big dogs.*  
*They **didn't** want to go out.*
- 2 The verb *have* has two forms in the present.  
*I **don't** have **any** money.*  
*I **haven't** got*  
But, in the past ... *I **didn't** have any money.*
- 3 Infinitives and *-ing* forms can be negative.  
*We decided **not to do** anything.*  
*I like **not working**. It suits me.*
- 4 *Not* can go with other parts of a sentence.  
*Ask him, **not me**.*  
*Buy me anything, but **not perfume**.*
- 5 When we introduce negative ideas with verbs such as *think*, *believe*, *suppose*, and *imagine*, we make the first verb negative, not the second.  
*I **don't think** you're right. \*I think you **aren't** ...*  
*I **don't suppose** you want a game of tennis?*
- 6 In short answers, the following forms are possible.  
*'I think so.'*  
*'I believe so.'*  
*Are you coming?' 'I hope so.'*  
*'I don't think so.'*  
*'I hope not.'*  
*I think not is possible. \*I don't hope so is not possible.*



## Negative questions

- Negative questions can express various ideas.  
*Haven't you finished school yet?* (surprise)  
*Don't you think we should wait for them?* (suggestion)  
*Wouldn't it be better to go tomorrow?* (persuasion)  
*Can't you see I'm busy? Go away!* (criticism)  
*Isn't it a lovely day!* (exclamation)
- In the main use of negative questions, the speaker would normally expect a positive situation, but now expresses a negative situation. The speaker therefore is surprised.  
*Don't you like ice-cream? Everyone likes ice-cream!*  
*Haven't you done your homework yet? What have you been doing?*
- Negative questions can also be used to mean *Confirm what I think is true*. In this use it refers to a positive situation.  
*Haven't I met you somewhere before?* (I'm sure I have.)  
*Didn't we speak about this yesterday?* (I'm sure we did.)
- The difference between the two uses can be seen clearly if we change them into sentences with question tags.  
*You haven't done your homework yet, have you?* (negative sentence, positive tag)  
*We've met before, haven't we?* (positive sentence, negative tag)

## Notes

- Sometimes there is little or no difference between *will* and *going to*.  
*We'll run out of money if we aren't careful.*  
*We're going to*
- We use *going to* when we have physical evidence to support our prediction.  
*She's going to have a baby.* (Look at her bump.)  
*Liverpool are going to win.* (It's 4-0, and there are only five minutes left.)  
*That glass is going to fall.* (It's rolling to the edge of the table.)
- We can use *will* when there is no such outside evidence. Our prediction is based on our own personal opinion. It can be more theoretical and abstract.  
*I'm sure you'll have a good time at the wedding.* (This is my opinion.)  
*I reckon Liverpool will win.* (Said the day before the match.)  
*The glass will break if it falls.* (This is what happens to glasses that fall.)
- Compare the sentences.  
*I bet John will be late home. The traffic is always bad at this time.* (= my opinion)  
*John's going to be late home. He left a message on my voicemail.* (= a fact)  
*Don't lend Keith your car. He'll crash it.* (= a theoretical prediction)  
*Look out! We're going to crash!* (= a prediction based on evidence)

## UNIT 5

### Introduction to future forms

There is no one future tense in English. Instead, there are several verb forms that can refer to future time. Sometimes, several forms are possible to express a similar meaning, but not always.

#### will for prediction

- The most common use of *will* is as an auxiliary verb to show future time. It expresses a future fact or prediction – *at some time in the future this event will happen*. This use is uncoloured by ideas such as intention, decision, arrangement, willingness, etc.  
*I'll be 30 in a few days' time.*  
*It will be cold and wet tomorrow, I'm afraid.*  
*Who do you think will win the match?*  
*You'll feel better if you take this medicine.*  
*I'll see you later.*  
This is the nearest English has to a neutral, pure future tense.
- Will* for a prediction can be based more on an opinion than a fact or evidence. It is often found with expressions such as *I think ...*, *I hope ...*, *I'm sure ...*.  
*I think Labour will win the next election.*  
*I hope you'll come and visit me.*  
*I'm sure you'll pass your exams.*
- Will* is common in the main clause when there is a subordinate clause with *if*, *when*, *before*, etc. Note that we don't use *will* in the subordinate clause.  
*You'll break the glass if you aren't careful.*  
*When you're ready, we'll start the meeting.*  
*I won't go until you arrive.*  
*As soon as Peter comes, we'll have lunch.*

#### going to for prediction

*Going to* can express a prediction based on a present fact. There is evidence now that something is sure to happen. We can see the future from the present.

*Careful! That glass is going to fall over. Too late!*  
*Look at that blue sky! It's going to be a lovely day.*

#### Decisions and intentions – will and going to

- Will* is used to express a decision or intention made at the moment of speaking.  
*I'll phone you back in a minute.*  
*Give me a ring some time. We'll go out together.*  
*'The phone's ringing.' 'I'll get it.'*
- Going to* is used to express a future plan, decision, or intention made before the moment of speaking.  
*When she grows up, she's going to be a ballet dancer.*  
*We're going to get married in the spring.*

#### Other uses of will and shall

- Will* as a prediction is an auxiliary verb that simply shows future time. The word itself has no real meaning.  
*Tomorrow will be cold and windy.*
- Will* is also a modal auxiliary verb, and so it can express a variety of meanings. The meaning often depends on the meaning of the main verb.  
*I'll help you carry those bags.* (= offer)  
*Will you marry me?* (= willingness)  
*Will you open the window?* (= request)  
*My car won't start.* (= refusal)  
*I'll love you for ever.* (= promise)  
*'The phone's ringing.' 'It'll be for me.'* (= prediction about the present)
- Shall* is found mainly in questions. It is used with *I* and *we*.  
*Where shall I put your tea?* (I'm asking for instructions.)  
*What shall we do tonight?* (I'm asking for a decision.)  
*Shall I cook supper tonight?* (I'm offering to help.)  
*Shall we eat out tonight?* (I'm making a suggestion.)



## Present Continuous for arrangements

- The Present Continuous is used to express personal arrangements and fixed plans, especially when the time and place have been decided. A present tense is used because there is some reality in the present. The event is planned or decided, and we can see it coming. The event is usually in the near future.

*I'm having lunch with Brian tomorrow.*

*What time are you meeting him?*

*Where are you having lunch?*

*What are you doing tonight?*

- The Present Continuous for future is often used with verbs of movement and activity.

*Are you coming to the cinema tonight?*

*I'm meeting the director tomorrow.*

*We're playing tennis this afternoon.*

- The Present Continuous is used to refer to arrangements between people. It is not used to refer to events that people can't control.

*It's going to rain this afternoon. \*It's raining this afternoon.*

*The sun rises at 5.30 tomorrow. \*The sun is rising ...*

### Notes

- Sometimes there is little or no difference between the Present Continuous and *going to* to refer to the future.  
*We're seeing* Hamlet at the theatre tonight.  
*We're going to see*
- When there is a difference, the Present Continuous emphasizes an arrangement with some reality in the present; *going to* expresses a person's intentions.  
*I'm seeing* my girlfriend tonight.  
*I'm going* to ask her to marry me. *\*I'm asking ...*  
*What are you doing* this weekend?  
*What are you going to do* about the broken toilet? (= What have you decided to do?)

## Present Simple for timetables

- The Present Simple refers to a future event that is seen as unalterable because it is based on a timetable or calendar.

*My flight leaves at 10.00.*

*Term starts on 4 April.*

*What time does the film start?*

*It's my birthday tomorrow.*

- It is used in subordinate clauses introduced by conjunctions such as *if*, *when*, *before*, *as soon as*, *unless*, etc.

*We'll have a picnic if the weather stays fine.*

*When I get home, I'll cook the dinner.*

*I'll leave as soon as it stops raining.*

## Future Continuous

- The Future Continuous expresses an activity that will be in progress before and after a time in the future.

*Don't phone at 8.00. We'll be having supper.*

*This time tomorrow I'll be flying to New York.*

- The Future Continuous is used to refer to a future event that will happen in the natural course of events. This use is uncoloured by ideas such as intention, decision, arrangement, or willingness. As time goes by, this event will occur.

*Don't worry about our guests. They'll be arriving any minute now.*

*We'll be going right back to the football after the break. (said on TV)*

## Future Perfect

The Future Perfect refers to an action that will be completed before a definite time in the future. It is not a very common verb form.

*I'll have done all my work by this evening.*

## UNIT 6

### Expressing quantity

#### Quantifiers

- The following can be used before a noun.

some/any	much/many	each/every	more/most	a little/little
a few/few	both	fewer/less	several	all/no enough

With count nouns only	With uncount nouns only	With singular count nouns only
(not) many biscuits a few cars very few trees fewer books several answers	(not) much luck a little cheese very little experience less time	each boy every time
		With plural count nouns only
		both parents
With both count and uncount nouns		
some money some eggs (not) any water (not) any friends	more/most wine more/most people all/no work all/no children	enough food enough apples

- Most of the quantifiers can be used without a noun. *No*, *all*, *every*, and *each* cannot.

*Have you got any money?* **Not much/a little/enough.**

*Are there any eggs?* **A few/not many.**

*Have some wine.* **I don't want any.**

*How many people came?* **Very few.**

*Have some more tea.* **I've got some.**

*Did Ann or Sam go?* **Both.**

- Most of the quantifiers can be used with *of* + *the/my/those*, etc. + noun. *No* and *every* cannot.

*They took all of my money.*

*Take a few of these tablets.*

*Some of the people* at the party started dancing.

*Were any of my friends* at the party?

*Very few of my friends* smoke.

*Not much of the food* was left.

*I've missed too many of my French lessons.*

*I couldn't answer several of the questions.*

*I'll have a little of the strawberry cake, please.*

*Both of my children* are clever.

*I feel tired most of the time.*

*I've had enough of your jokes.*

- For *no* and *every*, we use *none* and *every one* or *all*.

*None of the audience* was listening.

*All of the hotels* were booked.

In formal, written English, *none* is followed by a singular form of the verb.

*None of the guests has* arrived yet.

But in informal English, a plural verb is possible.

*None of my friends smoke.*

*None of the lights are* working.

### Note

When we use *none* with a plural noun or pronoun, the verb can be singular or plural. Grammatically, it should be singular, but people often use the plural when they speak.

*None of my friends is* coming.

*None of my friends are* coming.



### **some, any, somebody, anything**

- 1 The basic rule is that *some* and its compounds are used in affirmative sentences, and *any* and its compounds in negatives and questions.  
*I need **some** help.*  
*I need **somebody** to help me.*  
*Give me **something** for my headache.*  
*I don't need **any** shopping.*  
*We can't go **anywhere** without being recognized.*  
*Is there **any** sugar left?*  
*Did **anyone** remember to buy milk?*
- 2 *Some* and its compounds are used in requests or invitations, or when we expect the answer 'yes'.  
*Have you got **some** money you could lend me?*  
*Would you like **something** to eat?*  
*Can we go **somewhere** quiet to talk?*
- 3 *Any* and its compounds are used in affirmative sentences that have a negative meaning.  
*He **never** has **any** money.*  
*You made **hardly any** mistakes.*  
*I made the cake myself **without any** help.*
- 4 *Any* and its compounds are used to express *It doesn't matter which/who/where*.  
*Take **any** book you like. I don't mind.*  
***Anyone** will tell you 2 and 2 makes 4.*  
*Sit **anywhere** you like.*  
*I eat **anything**. I'm not fussy.*

### **nobody, no one, nowhere, nothing**

- 1 These are more emphatic forms.  
*I saw **nobody** all weekend.*  
*I've eaten **nothing** all day.*
- 2 They can be used at the beginning of sentences.  
***No one** was saved.*  
***Nobody** understands me.*  
***Nowhere** is safe any more.*

### **much, many, a lot of, lots of, a great deal of, a large number of, plenty of**

- 1 *Much* and *many* are usually used in questions and negatives.  
*How **much** does it cost?*  
*How **many** people came to the party?*  
*Is there **much** unemployment in your country?*  
*I don't have **much** money.*  
*Will there be **many** people there?*  
*You don't see **many** snakes in England.*
- 2 We find *much* and *many* in affirmative sentences after *so*, *as*, and *too*.  
*He has **so much** money that he doesn't know what to do with it.*  
*She's got nearly **as many** Facebook friends as I have.*  
*You make **too many** mistakes. Be careful.*
- 3 In affirmative sentences, the following forms are found.  
Spoken/informal  
*There'll be **plenty of** food/people. (uncount and count)*  
*We've got **lots of** time/friends. (uncount and count)*  
*I lost **a lot of** my furniture/things. (uncount and count)*  
Written/more formal  
*A **great deal of** money was lost during the strike. (uncount)*  
*A **large number of** strikes are caused by bad management. (count)*  
***Many** world leaders are quite young. (count)*  
***Much** time is wasted in trivial pursuits. (uncount)*
- 4 These forms are found without nouns.  
*'Have you got enough socks?' 'Lots.'*  
*'How many people were there?' 'A lot.'*  
*Don't worry about food. We've got **plenty**.*

### **little/few/less/fewer**

- 1 *A little* and *a few* express a small amount or number in a positive way. Although there is only a little, it is probably enough.  
*Can you lend me **a little** sugar?*  
***A few** friends are coming round tonight.*
- 2 *Little* and *few* express a small amount in a negative way. There is not enough.  
***Very few** people passed the exam.*  
*There's **very little** milk left.*
- 3 *Fewer* is the comparative of *few*; *less* is the comparative of *little*.  
***Fewer** people go to church these days. (= count noun)*  
*I spend **less and less** time doing what I want to. (= uncount noun)*  
It is becoming more common to find *less* with a count noun. Many people think that this is incorrect and sounds terrible.  
~~*\*Less people go to church.*~~  
~~*\*You should smoke less cigarettes.*~~

### **all**

- 1 We do not usually use *all* to mean *everybody/everyone/everything*.  
***Everybody** had a good time.*  
***Everything** was ruined in the fire.*  
*I said hello to **everyone**.*  
But if *all* is followed by a relative clause, it can mean *everything*.  
***All** (that) I own is yours.*  
*I spend **all** I earn.*  
This structure can have a negative meaning, expressing ideas such as *nothing more* or *only this*.  
***All I want** is a place to sleep.*  
***All I had** was a couple of beers.*  
***All that happened** was that he pushed her a bit, and she fell over.*
- 2 Before a noun with a determiner (for example *the*, *my*, *this*) both *all* and *all of* are possible.  
*You eat **all (of)** the time.*  
***All (of)** my friends* are coming tonight.  
Before a noun with no determiner, we use *all*.  
***All people** are born equal.*
- 3 With personal pronouns, we use *all of*.  
***All of you** passed. Well done!*  
*I don't need these books. You can have **all of them**.*



## UNIT 7

### Introduction to modal auxiliary verbs

- 1 These are the modal auxiliary verbs.

can	could	may	might	shall	should
will	would	must	ought to		

They are used with great frequency and with a wide range of meanings. They express ideas such as willingness and ability, permission and refusal, obligation and prohibition, suggestion, necessity, promise, and intention. All modal auxiliary verbs can express degrees of certainty, probability, or possibility.

- 2 They have several characteristics.

- There is no -s in the third person.

*He can swim.*

*She must go.*

- There is no do/does in the question.

*May I ask a question?*

*Shall we go?*

- There is no don't/doesn't in the negative.

*You shouldn't tell lies.*

*You won't believe this.*

- They are followed by an infinitive without to. The exception is ought to.

*It might rain.*

*Could you help?*

*We ought to be on our way.*

- They don't really have past forms, infinitives, or -ing forms. Other verbs are used instead.

*I had to work hard when I was young.*

*I'd love to be able to ski.*

*I hate having to get up in the morning.*

- They can be used with perfect infinitives to refer to the past. For more information, see Grammar Reference Unit 10.

*You should have told me that you can't swim.*

*You might have drowned!*

*She must have been crazy to marry him.*

### Modal auxiliary verbs of probability, present and future

The main modal auxiliary verbs that express probability are described here in order of certainty. *Will* is the most certain, and *might/could* are the least certain.

#### will

- 1 *Will* and *won't* are used to predict a future action. The truth or certainty of what is asserted is more or less taken for granted.

*I'll see you later.*

*His latest book will be out next month.*

- 2 *Will* and *won't* are also used to express what we believe or guess to be true about the present. They indicate an assumption based on our knowledge of people and things, their routines, character, and qualities.

*'You've just got a text.' 'That'll be the taxi.'*

*Leave the meat in the oven. It won't be cooked yet.*

*'I wonder what Sarah's doing.' 'Well, it's Monday morning, so I guess that right now she'll be taking the children to school.'*

#### must and can't

- 1 *Must* is used to assert what we infer or conclude to be the most logical or rational interpretation of a situation. We do not have all the facts, so it is less certain than *will*.

*You say he walked across the Sahara Desert! He must be mad!*

*You must be tired. That was a long walk!*

- 2 The negative of this use is *can't*.

*She can't have a ten-year-old daughter! She's only 21 herself.*

*'Whose is this coat?' 'It can't be Mary's. It's too small.'*

#### should

- 1 *Should* expresses what may reasonably be expected to happen.

Expectation means believing that things are or will be as we want them to be. This use of *should* has the idea of *if everything has gone according to plan*.

*Our guests should be here soon* (if they haven't got lost).

*This homework shouldn't take you too long* (if you've understood what you have to do).

*We should be moving into our new house soon* (as long as nothing goes wrong).

- 2 *Should* in this use has the idea that we want the action to happen. It is not used to express negative or unpleasant ideas.

*You should pass the exam. You've worked hard.*

*\*You should fail the exam. You haven't done any work at all.*

*We would say ... I don't think you'll pass the exam.*

#### may and might

- 1 *May* expresses the possibility that an event will happen or is happening.

*We may go to Greece this year. We haven't decided yet.*

*'Where's Ann?' 'She may be having a bath, I don't know.'*

- 2 *Might* is more tentative and slightly less certain than *may*.

*It might rain. Take your umbrella.*

*'Where's Peter?' 'He might be upstairs. There's a light on.'*

- 3 Learners of English often express these concepts of future possibility with *perhaps* or *maybe* ... *will* and so avoid using *may* and *might*. However, these are widely used by native speakers, and you should try to use them.

#### could

- 1 *Could* has a similar meaning to *might*.

*You could be right. I'm not sure.*

*That film could be worth seeing. It had a good review.*

- 2 *Couldn't* is not used to express a future possibility. The negative of *could* in this use is *might not*.

*You might not be right.*

*That film might not be any good.*

- 3 *Couldn't* has a similar meaning to *can't* above, only slightly weaker.

*She couldn't have a ten-year-old daughter! She's only 21 herself.*

#### Related verbs

Here are some related verb forms that express probability.

*William's so brainy. He's bound to pass the exam.*

*We're having a picnic tomorrow, so it's bound to rain.*

*You're likely to find life very different when you live in China.*

*Are you likely to come across Judith while you're in Oxford?*



## Other uses of modal auxiliary verbs and related verbs

Here is some further information about modal auxiliary verbs, but it is by no means complete. See a grammar book for more details.

### Ability

- 1 *Can* expresses ability. The past is expressed by *could*.  
*I can speak three languages.*  
*I could swim when I was three.*
- 2 Other forms are provided by *be able to*.  
*I've never **been able to** understand her.* (Present Perfect)  
*I'd love to **be able to** drive.* (infinitive)  
***Being able to** drive has transformed my life.* (-ing form)  
*You'll **be able to** walk again soon.* (future)
- 3 To express a fulfilled ability on one particular occasion in the past, *could* is not used. Instead, we use *was able to* or *managed to*.  
*She **was able to** survive by clinging onto the wrecked boat.*  
*The prisoner **managed to** escape by climbing onto the roof.*

### Advice

- 1 *Should* and *ought* express mild obligation or advice. *Should* is much more common.  
*You **should** go to bed. You look very tired.*  
*You **ought to** take things easier.*
- 2 We use *had better* to give strong advice, or to tell people what to do. There can be an element of threat – 'If you don't do this, something bad will happen.'  
*You'd **better** get a haircut before the interview. (If you don't, you won't get the job.)*  
*I'm late. I'd **better** get a move on. (If I don't, I'll be in trouble.)*

### Note

The form is always past (*had*), but it refers to the immediate future.  
*She'd **better** start revising. The exams are next week.*

### Obligation

- 1 *Must* expresses strong obligation. Other verb forms are provided by *have to*.  
*You **must** try harder!*  
*You **mustn't** hit your baby brother.*  
*What time **do you have to** start work?*  
*I **had to** work hard to pass my exams.* (Past Simple)  
*You'll **have to** do this exercise again.* (future)  
*We might **have to** make some economies.* (infinitive)  
*She's **never had to** do a single day's work in her life.* (Present Perfect)  
*I hate **having to** get up early.* (-ing form)
- 2 *Must* expresses the opinion of the speaker.  
*I **must** get my hair cut. (I am telling myself.)*  
*You **must** do this again. (Teacher to student)*  
*Must* is associated with a more formal, written style.  
*Candidates **must** answer three questions.* (On an exam paper)  
*Books **must** be returned by the end of the week.* (Instructions in a library)
- 3 *Have to* expresses a general obligation based on a law or rule, or based on the authority of another person.  
*Children **have to** go to school until they're 16. (It's the law.)*  
*Mum says you **have to** tidy your room.*
- 4 *Mustn't* expresses negative obligation. *Don't have to* expresses the absence of obligation.  
*You **mustn't** steal. It's very naughty.*  
*You **don't have to** go to England in order to learn English.*

- 5 *Have got to* is common in British English. It is more informal than *have to*.  
*I've **got to** go now. Cheerio!*  
*Don't have a late night. We've **got to** get up early tomorrow.*
- 6 Here are some related verb forms that express obligation.  
*Visitors **are required to** have a visa.*  
*When you're 18, you're **supposed to** take responsibility for yourself.*  
*You **aren't supposed to** park on double yellow lines.*  
*You **need to** think carefully before you make a decision.*  
*He **doesn't need to** work. He's a millionaire.*

### Permission

- 1 *May*, *can*, and *could* are used to ask for permission.  
***May** I ask you a question?*  
***May** I use your phone?*  
***Can/Could** I go home? I don't feel well.*  
***Can/Could** I borrow your car tonight?*
- 2 *May* is used to give permission, but it sounds very formal. *Can* and *can't* are more common.  
*You **can** use a dictionary in this exam.*  
*You **can't** stay up till midnight. You're only five.*  
*You **can't** smoke in here. It's forbidden.*
- 3 To talk about permission generally, or permission in the past, we use *can*, *could*, or *be allowed to*.  
*Children **can/are allowed to** do what they want these days.*  
*I **couldn't** go out on my own until I was 16.*  
*I **wasn't allowed to***
- 4 Here are some related verb forms that express permission.  
*Passengers **are not permitted to** use mobile phones.*  
*My parents **don't allow me to** ...*  
*I'm **not allowed to** stay out late.*  
*My parents **don't let me** ...*  
Note that this sentence with *let* is not possible in the passive.  
*\*I'm not let ...*

### Willingness and refusal

- 1 *Will* expresses willingness. *Won't* expresses a refusal by either people or things. *Shall* is used in questions.  
*I'll help you.*  
*She says she **won't** get up until she's had breakfast in bed.*  
*The car **won't** start.*  
***Shall** I give you a hand?*
- 2 The past is expressed by *wouldn't*.  
*My boss said she **wouldn't** give me a promotion. I'm going to look for another job.*

### Requests

Several modal verbs express a request.  
***Can/Could/Will/Would** you do me a favour?*  
***Can/Could** I open the window?*

Modal verbs are also dealt with in Units 9, 10, and 11.



## UNIT 8

### 8.1 Introduction to relative clauses

It is important to understand the difference between two kinds of relative clauses.

- Defining relative (DR) clauses qualify a noun, and tell us exactly which person or thing is being referred to.  
*She likes people **who are good fun to be with**.*  
*Politicians **who tell lies** are odious.*  
*A corkscrew **you use to open a bottle of wine**.*  
*She likes people* on its own doesn't mean very much; we need to know which people she likes.  
*who tell lies* tells us exactly which politicians are odious. Without it, the speaker is saying that all politicians are odious.  
*A corkscrew is a thing* doesn't make sense on its own.
- Non-defining relative (NDR) clauses add secondary information to a sentence, almost as an afterthought.  
*My friend Andrew, **who is Scottish**, plays the bagpipes.*  
*Politicians, **who tell lies**, are odious.*  
*My favourite building is Durham Cathedral, **which took over 200 years to build**.*  
*My friend Andrew* is clearly defined. We don't need to know which Andrew is being discussed. The clause *who is Scottish* gives us extra information about him.  
*The clause who tell lies* suggests that all politicians tell lies. It isn't necessary to identify only those that deceive – they all do!  
*My favourite building* is clearly defined. The following clause simply tells us something extra.
- DR clauses are much more common in the spoken language, and NDR clauses are more common in the written language. In the spoken language, we can avoid a NDR clause.  
*My friend Andrew plays the bagpipes. He's Scottish, by the way.*
- When we speak, there is no pause before or after a DR clause, and no commas when we write. With NDR clauses, there are commas before and after, and pauses when we speak.  
*I like the things you say to me. (No commas, no pauses)*  
*My aunt (pause), who has been a widow for 20 years (pause), loves travelling.*

#### Defining relative clauses

- Notice how we can leave out the relative pronoun if it is the object of the relative clause. This is very common.

##### Pronoun left out

*Did you like the present ( ) I gave you?*  
*Who was that man ( ) you were talking to?*  
*The thing ( ) I like about Dave is his sense of humour.*

- We cannot leave out the pronoun if it is the subject of the clause.

##### Pronoun not left out

*I met a man **who** works in advertising.*  
*I'll lend you the book **that** changed my life.*  
*The thing **that** helped me most was knowing I wasn't alone.*

- Here are the possible pronouns. The words in brackets are possible, but not as common. ( ) means 'nothing'.

	Person	Thing
Subject	who (that)	that (which)
Object	( ) (that)	( ) (that)

#### Notes

- That* is preferred to *which* after superlatives, and words such as *all*, *every(thing)*, *some(thing)*, *any(thing)*, and *only*.  
*That's the **funniest** film **that** was ever made.*  
*All **that's** left is a few slices of ham.*

*Give me **something** that'll take away the pain.*  
*He's good at **any** sport **that** is played with a ball.*  
*The **only** thing **that**'ll help you is rest.*

- That* is also preferred after *it is ...*  
*It is a film **that** will be very popular.*
- Prepositions usually come at the end of the relative clause.  
*Come and meet the people I work **with**.*  
*This is the book I was telling you **about**.*  
*She's a friend I can always rely **on**.*

#### Non-defining relative clauses

- Relative pronouns cannot be left out of NDR clauses.

##### Relative pronoun as subject

*Paul Jennings, **who** has written several books, addressed the meeting.*  
*His last book, **which** received a lot of praise, has been a great success.*

##### Relative pronoun as object

*Paul Jennings, **who** I knew at university, addressed the meeting.*  
*His last book, **which** I couldn't understand at all, has been a great success.*

- Look at the possible pronouns. *Whom* is possible, but not as common.

	Person	Thing
Subject	... , who ... ,	... , which ... ,
Object	... , who (whom) ... ,	... , which ... ,

#### Note

Prepositions can come at the end of the clause.

*He talked about theories of market forces, **which** I'd never even heard of.*

In a more formal written style, prepositions come before the pronoun.  
*The privatization of railways, **to which** the present government is committed, is not universally popular.*

#### Which

*Which* can be used in NDR clauses to refer to the whole of the sentence before.

*She arrived on time, **which** amazed everybody.*  
*He gambled away all his money, **which** I thought was ridiculous.*  
*The coffee machine isn't working, **which** means we can't have any coffee.*

#### Whose

*Whose* can be used in both DR clauses and NDR clauses.

*That's the woman **whose** son was killed recently.*  
*My parents, **whose** only interest is gardening, never go away on holiday.*

#### What

*What* is used in DR clauses to mean *the thing that*.

*Has she told you **what's** worrying her?*  
***What** I need to know is where we're meeting.*

#### Why, when, where

- Why* can be used in DR clauses to mean *the reason why*.  
*I don't know **why** we're arguing.*
- When* and *where* can be used in DR clauses and NDR clauses.  
*Tell me **when** you expect to arrive.*  
*The hotel **where** we stayed was excellent.*  
*We go walking on Mondays, **when** the rest of the world is working.*  
*He works in Oxford, **where** my sister lives.*



## 8.2 Participles

- 1 When present participles (-ing) are used like adjectives or adverbs, they are active in meaning.  
*Modern art is **interesting**.*  
*Pour **boiling** water onto the pasta.*  
*She sat in the corner **crying**.*
- 2 When past participles (usually -ed) are used like adjectives or adverbs, they are passive in meaning.  
*I'm **interested** in modern art.*  
*Look at that **broken** doll.*  
*He sat in his chair, **filled** with horror at what he had just seen.*
- 3 Participles after a noun define and identify in the same way as relative clauses.  
*I met a woman **riding** a donkey. (= who was riding ...)*  
*The car **stolen** in the night was later found abandoned. (= that was stolen ...)*
- 4 Participles can be used as adverbs. They can describe:
  - two actions happening at the same time.  
*She sat by the fire **reading** a book.*
  - two actions that happen one after another.  
***Opening** his case, he took out a gun.*  
If it is important to show that the first action is completed before the second action begins, we use the perfect participle.  
***Having finished** lunch, we set off on our journey.*  
***Having had** a shower, she got dressed.*
  - two actions that happen one because of another.  
***Being** mean, he never bought anyone a Christmas present.*  
***Not knowing** what to do, I waited patiently.*
- 5 Many verbs are followed by -ing forms.  
*I **spent** the holiday **reading**.*  
*Don't **waste** time **thinking** about the past.*  
*Let's **go swimming**.*  
*He **keeps on asking** me to go out with him.*

## UNIT 9

### Expressing habit

#### Present Simple

- 1 Adverbs of frequency come before the main verb, but after the verb to be.  
*We **hardly** ever go out.*  
*She **frequently** forgets what she's doing.*  
*We don't **usually** eat fish.*  
*I **rarely** see Peter these days.*  
*We are **seldom** at home in the evening.*  
*Is he **normally** so bad-tempered?*
- 2 Sometimes, usually, and occasionally can come at the beginning or the end of a sentence.  
***Sometimes** we play cards.*  
*We go to the cinema **occasionally**.*  
The other adverbs of frequency don't usually move in this way.  
*\*Always I **have** tea in the morning.*

#### Present Continuous

- 1 The Present Continuous can be used to express a habit which happens often and perhaps unexpectedly. It happens more than is usual.  
*I like Peter. He's always **smiling**.*  
*She's always **giving** people presents.*
- 2 However, there is often an element of criticism with this structure. Compare these sentences said by a teacher.  
*Pedro always **asks** questions in class. (This is a fact.)*  
*Pedro **is always asking** questions in class. (This annoys the teacher.)*
- 3 There is usually an adverb of frequency with this use.  
*I'm **always losing** my keys.*  
*She's **forever leaving** the bath taps running.*

#### will and would

- 1 Will and would express typical behaviour. They describe both pleasant and unpleasant habits.  
*He'll sit at his computer for hours on end.*  
*She'd spend all day long gossiping with the neighbours.*  
Would cannot be used to express a state.  
*\*He'd live in a large house.*
- 2 Will and would, when decontracted and stressed, express an annoying habit or action.  
*He **WILL** come into the house with his muddy boots on.*  
*She **WOULD** make us wash in ice-cold water.*

#### used to + infinitive

- 1 This structure expresses a past action and/or a state. It has no present equivalent.  
*When I was a child, we **used to go** on holiday to the seaside. (action)*  
*He **used to** live in a large house. (state)*
- 2 Notice the negative and the question.  
*Where **did** you **use to go**?*  
*We **didn't use to** do anything interesting.*
- 3 We cannot use used to with a time reference + a number.  
*\*We **used to have** a holiday there for 10 years/three times.*  
But ...  
*We **used to go** there every year.*  
In a narrative, when expressing a series of past actions, it is common to begin with used to, then continue with would, for reasons of style.  
*When I was a child, we **used to go** on holiday to the seaside. We'd **play** on the beach, then we'd **eat** at a small café at lunchtime.*

#### be/get used to + noun + -ing form

- 1 This is totally different from used to + infinitive. It expresses an action that was difficult, strange, or unusual before, but is no longer so. Here, used is an adjective, and it means familiar with.  
*I found it difficult to get around London when I first came, but I'm **used to it** now.*  
*I'm **used to getting** around London by tube.*
- 2 Notice the use of get to express the process of change.  
*I'm **getting used to** the climate.*  
*Don't worry. You'll **get used to** eating with chopsticks.*



## UNIT 10

### Modal auxiliary verbs 2

Modal auxiliary verbs of probability in the past

- 1 All modal auxiliary verbs can be used with the perfect infinitive. They express varying degrees of certainty. *Will have done* is the most certain, and *might/may/could have done* is the least certain.  
*'I met a girl at your party. Tall. Attractive.'* *'That'll have been Sonya.'*  
*It must have been a good party. Everyone stayed till dawn.*  
*The music can't have been any good. Nobody danced.*  
*Where's Pete? He should have been here ages ago!*  
*He may have got lost.*  
*He might have decided not to come.*  
*He could have had an accident.*
- 2 *Would have thought* is common to express an assumption or supposition.  
*I'd have thought they'd be here by now. Where are they?*  
*You'd have thought she'd remember my birthday, wouldn't you?*  
*Wouldn't you have thought they'd ring if there was a problem?*

### Other uses of modal verbs in the past

#### should have done

- 1 *Should have done* can express advice or criticism about a past event. The sentence expresses what is contrary to the facts.  
*You should have listened to my advice. (You didn't listen.)*  
*I shouldn't have lied to you. I'm sorry. (I did lie.)*  
*You shouldn't have told her you hated her. (You did tell her.)*
- 2 Look at these sentences.  
*You should have been here yesterday!*  
*You should have seen his face!*  
*Should have done* is used here for comic effect. The suggestion is because it was so funny!

#### could have done

- 1 *Could have done* is used to express an unrealized past ability. Someone was able to do something in the past, but didn't do it.  
*I could have gone to university, but I didn't want to.*  
*We could have won the match. We didn't try hard enough.*  
*I could have told you that Chris wouldn't come. He hates parties.*
- 2 It is used to express a past possibility that didn't happen.  
*You fool! You could have killed yourself!*  
*We were lucky. We could have been caught in that traffic jam.*  
*When I took the burnt meal out of the oven, I could have cried!*
- 3 It is used to criticize people for not doing things.  
*You could have told me that Sue and Jim had split up!*  
*I've been cleaning the house for hours. You could at least have done your bedroom!*

#### might have done

- 1 The above use of *could have done* can also be expressed with *might have done*.  
*You might have helped instead of just sitting on your backside!*
- 2 *I might have known/guessed that ...* is used to introduce a typical action of someone or something.  
*I might have known that Peter would be late. He's always late.*  
*The car won't start. I might have guessed that would happen.*

#### needn't have

*Needn't have done* expresses an action that was done, but it wasn't necessary. It was a waste of time.

*I needn't have got up so early. The train was delayed.*  
*'I've bought you a new pen, because I lost yours.'* *'You needn't have bothered. I've got hundreds.'*

## UNIT 11

### Hypothesizing

#### First and second conditionals

- 1 First conditional sentences are based on fact in real time. They express a possible condition and its probable result.  
*If you pass your exams, I'll buy you a car.*
- 2 Second conditional sentences are not based on fact. They express a situation which is contrary to reality in the present and future. This unreality is shown by a tense shift from present to past. They express a hypothetical condition and its probable result.  
*If I were taller, I'd join the police force.*  
*What would you do if you won the lottery?*

#### Notes

- The difference between first and second conditional sentences is not about time. Both can refer to the present and future. By using past tense forms in the second conditional, the speaker suggests the situation is less probable, impossible, or imaginary. Compare the pairs of sentences.  
*If it rains this weekend, we'll ...* (said in England where it often rains)  
*If it rained in the Sahara, it would ...* (this would be most unusual)  
*If global warming continues, we'll ...* (I'm a pessimist.)  
*If global warming continued, we'd ...* (I'm an optimist.)  
*If you come to my country, you'll have a good time.* (possible)  
*If you came from my country, you'd understand us better.* (unlikely)  
*If I am elected as a member of Parliament, I'll ...* (real candidate)  
*If I ruled the world, I'd ...* (imaginary)
- We can use *were* instead of *was*, especially in a formal style.  
*If the situation were the opposite, would you feel obliged to help?*

#### Third conditional

- 1 Third conditional sentences are not based on fact. They express a situation which is contrary to reality in the past. This unreality is shown by a tense shift from Past Simple to Past Perfect.  
*If you'd come to the party, you'd have had a great time.*  
*I wouldn't have met my wife if I hadn't gone to France.*
- 2 It is possible for each of the clauses in a conditional sentence to have a different time reference, and the result is a mixed conditional.  
*If we had eaten (we didn't), we wouldn't be hungry (we are).*  
*I wouldn't have married her (I did) if I didn't love her (I do).*

#### Other structures that express hypothesis

- 1 The tense usage with *wish*, *if only*, and *I'd rather* is similar to the second and third conditionals. Unreality is expressed by a tense shift.  
*I wish I were taller. (But I'm not.)*  
*If only you hadn't said that! (But you did.)*  
*I'd rather you didn't wear lots of make-up. (But you do.)*  
*I'd rather you ...* is often used as a polite way to tell someone to do something differently. The negative form *I'd rather you didn't ...* is especially useful as a polite way to say 'no'.  
*'I'll come in with you.'* *'I'd rather you waited outside.'*  
*'Can I smoke in here?'* *'I'd rather you didn't.'*

#### Notes

- *wish ... would* can express regret, dissatisfaction, impatience, or irritation because someone WILL keep doing something.  
*I wish you'd stop smoking.*  
*I wish you'd do more to help in the house.*
- If we are not talking about willingness, *wish ... would* is not used.  
*I wish my birthday wasn't in December. (\*I wish it would be ...)*  
*I wish I could stop smoking. (\*I wish I would is strange because you should have control over what you are willing to do.)*  
*I wish he would stop smoking.*  
This is correct because it means *I wish he were willing to ...*



## UNIT 12

### Determiners

There are two kinds of determiners.

- 1 The first kind identifies things.  
articles – *a/an, the*  
possessives – *my, your, our ...*  
demonstratives – *this, that, these, those*
- 2 The second kind are quantifiers, expressing *how much* or *how many*.  
*some, any, no*  
*each, every, either, neither*  
*much, many, more, most*  
*(a) little, less, least*  
*(a) few, fewer, fewest*  
*enough, several*  
*all, both, half*  
*another, other*

Determiners that express quantity are dealt with in Unit 6.

### **each and every**

- 1 *Each* and *every* are used with singular nouns. *Each* can be used to talk about two or more people or things. *Every* is used to talk about three or more.  
*Every/Each time I come to your house it looks different.*  
*Each/Every bedroom in our hotel is decorated differently.*
- 2 In many cases, *each* and *every* can both be used with little difference in meaning.  
We prefer *each* if we are thinking of people or things separately, one at a time. We use *every* if we are thinking of the things or people all together as a group.  
*Each student gave the teacher a present.*  
*Every policeman in the country is looking for the killer.*

### **enough**

- 1 When *enough* is used as a determiner, it comes before the noun.  
*We haven't got enough food.*
- 2 When it is used as an adverb, it comes after the adjective, adverb, or verb.  
*Your homework isn't good enough.*  
*I couldn't run fast enough.*  
*You don't exercise enough.*

### **Articles**

The use of articles is complex as there are a lot of 'small' rules and exceptions. Here are the basic rules.

#### **a/an**

- 1 We use *a/an* to refer to a singular countable noun which is indefinite. Either we don't know which one, or it doesn't matter which one.  
*They live in a lovely house.*  
*I'm reading a good book.*  
*She's expecting a baby.*
- 2 We use *a/an* with professions.  
*She's a lawyer.*

#### **the**

- 1 We use *the* before a singular or plural noun, when both the speaker and the listener know which noun is being referred to.  
*They live in the green house opposite the library.*  
*The book was recommended by a friend.*  
*Mind the baby! She's near the fire.*  
*I'm going to the shops. Do you want anything?*  
*I'll see you in the pub later.*  
*'Where's Dad?' 'In the garden.'*
- 2 We use *the* when there is only one.  
*the world the River Thames the Atlantic*
- 3 We use *the* for certain places which are institutions. Which particular place isn't important.  
*We went to the cinema/theatre last night.*  
*We're going to the seaside.*

#### **a followed by the**

We use *a* to introduce something for the first time. When we refer to it again, we use *the*.

*I saw a man walking a dog in the park today. The man was tiny and the dog was huge!*

#### **Zero article**

- 1 We use no article with plural and uncountable nouns when talking about things in general.  
*Computers have changed our lives.*  
*Love is eternal.*  
*Dogs need a lot of exercise.*  
*I hate hamburgers.*
- 2 We use no article with meals.  
*Have you had lunch yet?*  
*Come round for dinner tonight.*  
*But ... We had a lovely lunch in an Italian restaurant.*



# Word list

Here is a list of most of the new words in the units of *New Headway Upper-Intermediate, Fourth edition Student's Book.*

*adj* = adjective  
*adv* = adverb  
*conj* = conjunction  
*coll* = colloquial  
*n* = noun  
*opp* = opposite  
*pl* = plural  
*prep* = preposition  
*pron* = pronoun  
*pp* = past participle  
*v* = verb  
*US* = American English



## UNIT 1

abroad *adv* /ə'brɔ:d/  
accept *v* /ək'sept/  
accident *n* /'æksɪdənt/  
adopted *v* /ə'dɒptɪd/  
air conditioning *n* /'eə  
kəndɪfɪnɪŋ/  
airport *n* /'eəpɔ:t/  
amazing *adj* /ə'meɪzɪŋ/  
awesome *adj* /'ɔ:səm/  
bang *coll* /bæŋ/  
barbecued *v* /'bɑ:bɪkjʊ:d/  
barrier *n* /'bæriə(r)/  
bath *n* /bɑ:θ/  
bathroom *n* /'bɑ:θru:m/  
beggar *n* /'begə(r)/  
begging *v* /'begɪŋ/  
birth family *n* /'bɜ:θ ,fæməli/  
blog *n* /blɒg/  
board *v* /bɔ:d/  
buddy *n* /'bʌdi/  
bumpy *adj* /'bʌmpi/  
careful *adj* /'keəfl/  
cheers *interj* /tʃɪəz/  
childhood *n* /'tʃaɪldhʊd/  
cleaning *v* /'kli:nɪŋ/  
clear *adj* /klɪə(r)/  
coast *n* /kəʊst/  
complain *v* /kəm'pleɪn/  
couple *n* /'kʌpl/  
crazy *adj* /'kreɪzi/  
crisp *adj* /krɪsp/  
dead *adj* /ded/  
desire *n* /dɪ'zaɪə(r)/  
dessert *n* /dɪ'zɜ:t/  
determine *v* /dɪ'tɜ:mɪn/  
difficult *adj* /dɪ'fɪkəlt/  
disappointment *n*  
/dɪsə'pɔɪntmənt/  
dislikes *n pl* /dɪs'lʌks/  
distance *n* /'dɪstəns/  
drag *n* /dræg/  
drop in *v* /drɒp 'ɪn/  
effective *adj* /ɪ'fektɪv/  
emotional energy *n* /ɪ,məʊʃənl  
'enədʒi/  
except *prep* /ɪk'sept/  
expected *v* /ɪk'spektɪd/  
fabulous *adj* /'fæbjələs/  
fall asleep *v* /fɔ:l ə'sli:p/  
family home *n* /,fæməli 'həʊm/  
famous *adj* /'feɪməs/  
fans *n pl* /fænz/  
fateful *adj* /'feɪtl/  
feared *v* /fɪəd/  
feel up to (something) /fi:l 'ʌp  
tə .../  
fend for himself /,fend fə(r)  
him'self/

flat *n* /flæt/  
flatmate *n* /'flætmeɪt/  
forever /fə'revə(r)/  
forgotten *v* /fə'gɒtn/  
formal *adj* /'fɔ:ml/  
fortnight *n* /'fɔ:tnaɪt/  
fortune teller *n* /'fɔ:tʃu:n ,telə(r)/  
foul play *n* /,faʊl 'pleɪ/  
freak *v* /fri:k/  
get it *idiom* /'get ɪt/  
get the better of (someone) /,get  
ðə 'betə(r) əv .../  
Google Earth *n* /,gu:gl 'ɜ:θ/  
grab *v* /græb/  
granted *v* /'grɑ:ntɪd/  
grasp *v* /grɑ:sp/  
grateful *adj* /'greɪtfl/  
guy *n* /gai/  
hang on *v* /hæŋ 'ɒn/  
hanging out *v* /,hæŋɪŋ 'aʊt/  
have a lot on /,həv ə lɒt 'ɒn/  
head *v* /hed/  
heartbroken *adj* /'hɑ:tbrəʊkən/  
hit on (something) *v* /'hɪt ɒn .../  
holiday *n* /'hɒlədeɪ/  
home-grown *adj* /,həʊm 'grəʊn/  
homecoming *n* /'həʊmkʌmɪŋ/  
homeless *adj* /'həʊmləs/  
homemade *adj* /,həʊm'meɪd/  
homepage *n* /'həʊm,peɪdʒ/  
homesick *adj* /'həʊmsɪk/  
hometown *n* /'həʊmtaʊn/  
homework *n* /'həʊmwɜ:k/  
hop in *v* /hɒp 'ɪn/  
host family *n* /'həʊst ,fæməli/  
house-bound *adj* /'haʊs baʊnd/  
house-proud *adj* /'haʊs praʊd/  
house-warming *adj* /'haʊs  
'wɔ:ɪnɪŋ/  
houseplant *n* /'haʊs plɑ:nt/  
housewife *n* /'haʊswaɪf/  
housework *n* /'haʊswɜ:k/  
illiterate *adj* /ɪ'lɪtərət/  
incredible *adj* /ɪn'kredəbl/  
informal *adj* /ɪn'fɔ:ml/  
kind of (weird) *idiom* /'kaɪnd  
əv .../  
lesson *n* /'lesn/  
life expectancy *n* /'laɪf  
ɪk'spektənsɪ/  
life insurance *n* /'laɪf ɪn,sʊərəns/  
life-size *adj* /'laɪf saɪz/  
lifelong *adj* /'laɪflɒŋ/  
lifestyle *n* /'laɪfstɑɪl/  
lift (transport in a vehicle) *v* /lɪft/  
likes *n pl* /laɪks/  
load of (something) /'ləʊd əv .../  
lost *v* /lɒst/  
Lucky you! /,lʌki 'ju/  
make a living /meɪk ə 'lɪvɪŋ/

mega *adj* /'megə/  
memories *n pl* /'meməɪz/  
mile *n* /maɪl/  
Missing you. /'mɪsɪŋ ju/  
motorbike *n* /'məʊtəbaɪk/  
mousse *n* /mu:s/  
moving *v* /'mu:vɪŋ/  
nap *n* /næp/  
network *n* /'netwɜ:k/  
news *n pl* /nju:z/  
nice *adj* /naɪs/  
notorious *adj* /nəʊ'tɔ:riəs/  
on business /ɒn 'bɪznəs/  
on holiday /ɒn 'hɒlədeɪ/  
opportunity *n* /,ɒpə'tju:nəti/  
originally *adv* /ə'rɪdʒənəli/  
orphanage *n* /'ɔ:fənɪdʒ/  
pass *v* /pɑ:s/  
passed away *v* /pɑ:st ə'weɪ/  
picnic *n* /'pɪknɪk/  
plays *n pl* /pleɪz/  
pretty *adj* /'prɪti/  
promise *v* /'prɒmɪs/  
put up *v* /pʊt 'ʌp/  
radius *n* /'reɪdɪəs/  
railway track *n* /'reɪlweɪ træk/  
raindrops *n pl* /'reɪndrɒps/  
recognize *v* /'rekəɡnaɪz/  
rest of (something) /'rest əv .../  
return *v* /rɪ'tɜ:n/  
rough *adj* /rʌf/  
rubbish *adj* /'rʌbɪʃ/  
salesman *n* /'seɪlzmən/  
sand *n* /sænd/  
scared *v* /skeəd/  
served *v* /sɜ:vɪd/  
settled down *v* /,setld 'daʊn/  
shabby *adj* /'ʃæbi/  
shelling *v* /'ʃelɪŋ/  
shells *n pl* /ʃelz/  
shelter *v* /'ʃeltə(r)/  
shock *n* /ʃɒk/  
show *n* /ʃəʊ/  
significance *n* /sɪɡ'nɪfɪkəns/  
sleeping rough /,sli:pɪŋ 'rʌf/  
slums *n pl* /slʌmz/  
snowstorm *n* /'snəʊstɔ:m/  
somewhere *n* /'sʌmwɛə(r)/  
spectacular *adj* /spek'tækjələ(r)/  
spend (a year) *v* /spend .../  
station *n* /'steɪʃn/  
strange *adj* /streɪndʒ/  
strategy *n* /'strætədʒi/  
stressed out /strest 'aʊt/  
struck gold /strʌk 'gəʊld/  
stuff *n* /stʌf/  
subway *n* /'sʌbweɪ/  
suspicious *adj* /sə'spɪʃəs/  
sweeper *n* /'swi:pə(r)/  
swing it /'swɪŋ ɪt/

take it easy /,teɪk ɪt 'i:zi/  
tickets *n pl* /'tɪkɪts/  
tidy *adj* /'taɪdi/  
toasts *v* /təʊsts/  
tourists *n pl* /'tuərɪsts/  
travel agent *n* /'trævl ,eɪdʒənt/  
unbelievable *adj* /,ʌnbɪ'li:vəbl/  
vivid *adj* /'vɪvɪd/  
wandering *v* /'wɒndərɪŋ/  
waterfall *n* /'wɔ:təfɔ:l/  
weird *adj* /weɪd/  
wish *n* /wɪʃ/  
wrong *adj* /rɒŋ/  
zoomed down *v* /'zu:md daʊn/



## UNIT 2

accomplish *v* /ə'kʌmplɪʃ/  
accumulation *n* /ə,kju:mjə'leɪʃn/  
adventurer *n* /əd'ventʃərə(r)/  
advice *n* /əd'vaɪs/  
ancient *adj* /'eɪnfənt/  
antique *adj* /æn'tɪk/  
at stake *idiom* /ət 'steɪk/  
autobiography *n* /,ɔ:təbaɪ'ɒgrəfi/  
backpacker *n* /'bækpækə(r)/  
banned *v* /bænd/  
best-selling *adj* /,best 'selɪŋ/  
bike ride *n* /'baɪk raɪd/  
biodegrade *v* /,baɪəʊdɪ'greɪd/  
boyfriend *n* /'bɔɪfrend/  
brilliant *adj* /'brɪliənt/  
cancer *n* /'kænsə(r)/  
charity *n* /'tʃærəti/  
cheap *adj* /tʃi:p/  
choking *v* /'tʃəʊkɪŋ/  
clogging *v* /'klɒŋɪŋ/  
coastal *adj* /'kəʊstl/  
coastlines *n pl* /'kəʊstlaɪnz/  
combs *n pl* /kəʊmz/  
command *v* /kə'mɑ:nd/  
complex *n* /'kɒmpleks/  
consequences *n pl*  
/'kɒnsɪkwənsɪz/  
conservationist *n*  
/kɒnsə'veɪʃənɪst/  
corridor *n* /'kɒrɪdɔ:(r)/  
countless *adj* /'kaʊntləs/  
crime story *n* /'kraɪm ,stɔ:ri/  
culprit *n* /'kʌlprɪt/  
debris *n* /'debrɪ/  
decade *n* /'dekeɪd/  
destination *n* /,destɪ'neɪʃn/  
devastating *adj* /'devəstetɪŋ/  
diarrhoea *n* /,daɪə'riə/  
director *n* /dɪ'rektə(r)/  
discover *v* /dɪ'skʌvə(r)/  
do away with (something) /du  
ə'weɪ wɪð .../



dolphin *n* /'dɒlfɪn/  
 dumped *v* /dʌmpt/  
 edge *n* /edʒ/  
 emergency *n* /i'mɜːdʒənsi/  
 emperor *n* /'empəɹə(r)/  
 engineering *n* /,endʒɪ'nɪərɪŋ/  
 environmental emergency *n* /ɪnvaɪrən,mentl i'mɜːdʒənsi/  
 explorer *n* /ɪk'splɔːrə(r)/  
 extensively *adv* /ɪk'stensɪvli/  
 factory *n* /'fæktəri/  
 fantastic *adj* /fæn'tæstɪk/  
 fighter plane *n* /'faɪtə pleɪn/  
 fillers *n pl* /'fɪləz/  
 flecks *n pl* /fleks/  
 Formula 1 car *n* /,fɔːmjələ 'wɑːn kɑː(r)/  
 fortune *n* /'fɔːtʃuːn/  
 fraction *n* /'frækʃn/  
 fragments *n pl* /'frægmənts/  
 future *n* /'fjuːtʃə(r)/  
 get down to business /get ,daʊn tə 'bɪznəs/  
 global *adj* /'glɔːbl/  
 gobbled up *v* /,gɒblɪd 'ʌp/  
 gold *n* /gəʊld/  
 GPS *n* /,dʒɪː piː 'es/  
 guarantee *v* /,gærən'tiː/  
 headache *n* /'hedɪk/  
 headquarters *n* /,hed'kwɔːtəz/  
 heart of (something) /'hɑːt əv .../  
 helmets *n pl* /'helɪmts/  
 history *n* /'hɪstri/  
 honest *adj* /'ɒnɪst/  
 hostel *n* /'hɒstl/  
 hot-air balloon *n* /,hɒt 'eə bə,lʊn/  
 infinite *adj* /'ɪnfɪnət/  
 interview *n* /'ɪntəvjʊː/  
 jewellery *n* /'dʒuːəlri/  
 journey *n* /'dʒɜːni/  
 jungle *n* /'dʒʌŋɡl/  
 jute bag *n* /'dʒuːt bæɡ/  
 learn *v* /lɜːn/  
 lethal *adj* /'liːθl/  
 litter *n* /'lɪtə(r)/  
 loss *n* /lɒs/  
 luxury *adj* /'lʌkʃəri/  
 magnificent *adj* /mæɡ'nɪfɪsnt/  
 make the big time /,meɪk ðə 'bɪɡ taɪm/  
 massive *adj* /'mæsɪv/  
 maze *n* /meɪz/  
 merchant *n* /'mɜːtʃənt/  
 misleading *adj* /,mɪs'liːdɪŋ/  
 mouldings *n pl* /'məʊldɪŋz/  
 mugged *v* /mʌɡd/  
 must-see *adj* /mʌst 'siː/  
 nervous *adj* /'nɜːvəs/  
 novel *n* /'nɒvl/  
 nurdle *n* /'nɜːdl/  
 obscenity *n* /əb'senəti/  
 offices *n pl* /'ɒfɪsɪz/  
 online community *n* /ɒn,lain kə'mjuːnəti/  
 Ouch! /aʊtʃ/  
 out of control /,aʊt əv kən'trəʊl/  
 outskirts *n pl* /'aʊtskaɪts/  
 outstanding *adj* /aʊt'stændɪŋ/

overboard *adv* /'əʊvəbɔːd/  
 overland *adv* /'əʊvələnd/  
 overtime *n* /'əʊvətaɪm/  
 packaging *n* /'pækɪdʒɪŋ/  
 paradise island *n* /,pærədaɪs 'aɪlənd/  
 parkland *n* /'pɑːklænd/  
 partying *v* /'pɑːtɪŋ/  
 pellets *n pl* /'pelɪts/  
 personal assistant *n* /,pɜːsənəl ə'sɪstənt/  
 pharaohs *n pl* /'feərəʊz/  
 plastic *n* /'plæstɪk/  
 pleased with (somebody) /'pliːzɪd wɪð .../  
 poisoned *v* /'pɔɪznd/  
 poll *n* /pəʊl/  
 pollute *v* /pə'ljuːt/  
 posts *n pl* /pəʊsts/  
 pristine *adj* /'prɪstɪn/  
 private beach *n* /,praɪvət 'biːtʃ/  
 problems *n pl* /'prɒbləmz/  
 products *n pl* /'prɒdʌkts/  
 profit *n* /'prɒfɪt/  
 publishing *n* /'pʌblɪʃɪŋ/  
 quarter *n* /'kwɔːtə(r)/  
 raise *v* /reɪz/  
 raw *adj* /rɔː/  
 reduce *v* /rɪ'djuːs/  
 reflections *n pl* /rɪ'flekʃnz/  
 reject *v* /rɪ'dʒekt/  
 reliable *adj* /rɪ'laɪəbl/  
 report *n* /rɪ'pɔːt/  
 results *n pl* /rɪ'zʌlts/  
 roadworks *n pl* /'rəʊdwɜːks/  
 route *n* /ruːt/  
 rubbish *n* /'rʌbɪʃ/  
 ruining *v* /'ruːɪnɪŋ/  
 safari *n* /sə'fɑːri/  
 sat nav *n* /'sæt nəv/  
 scale *n* /skeɪl/  
 scandal *n* /'skændl/  
 scenery *n* /'siːnəri/  
 scream *v* /skriːm/  
 scuba diving *n* /'skuːbə ,dɑːvɪŋ/  
 second thoughts *n pl* /,sekənd 'θɔːts/  
 self-catering *adj* /,self 'keɪtərɪŋ/  
 set off for (somewhere) /set 'ɒf fə(r) .../  
 shame *n* /ʃeɪm/  
 shark *n* /ʃɑːk/  
 shoulders *n pl* /'ʃəʊldəz/  
 sightseeing *n* /'saɪtsiːɪŋ/  
 skydiving *n* /'skaɪdaɪvɪŋ/  
 sloshing *v* /'slɒʃɪŋ/  
 soiling *v* /'sɔɪlɪŋ/  
 speed limit *n* /'spiːd ,lɪmɪt/  
 spine *n* /spaɪn/  
 spoil *v* /spɔɪl/  
 sponsored *adj* /'spɒnsəd/  
 spurn *v* /spɜːn/  
 staggered *v* /'stæɡəd/  
 stroll *n* /strəʊl/  
 structures *n pl* /'strʌktʃəz/  
 stung *v* /stʌŋ/  
 success *n* /sək'ses/  
 suite *n* /swɪt/  
 surprise *v* /sə'praɪz/

sushi *n* /'suːʃi/  
 swirling *v* /'swɜːlɪŋ/  
 temple *n* /'tempəl/  
 terrace *n* /'terəs/  
 territory *n* /'terətri/  
 the monarchy *n* /ðə 'mɒnəki/  
 thieves *n pl* /θiːvz/  
 throwaway society *n* /,θrəʊəweɪ sə'saɪəti/  
 toothbrushes *n pl* /'tuːθbrʌʃɪz/  
 tourist spots *n pl* /'tɔːrɪst spɒts/  
 trade link *n* /'treɪd lɪŋk/  
 transformed *v* /træns'fɔːmd/  
 translate *v* /trænz'leɪt/  
 travel bug *n* /'trævl bʌɡ/  
 travel guides *n pl* /'trævl gaɪdz/  
 travel *v* /'trævl/  
 traveller *n* /'trævələ(r)/  
 tropical island *n* /,trɒpɪkl 'aɪlənd/  
 turquoise *n* /'tɜːkwɔɪz/  
 typical *adj* /'tɪpɪkl/  
 uneventful *adj* /,ʌnɪ'ventfl/  
 villa *n* /'vɪlə/  
 volunteers *n pl* /,vɒlən'tɪəz/  
 waste *n* /weɪst/  
 whale-watching *n* /'weɪl ,wɒtʃɪŋ/  
 white-water rafting *n* /,waɪt wɔːtə 'rɑːftɪŋ/  
 wind turbines *n pl* /'wɪnd ,tɜːbaɪnz/  
 worry *v* /'wəri/



### UNIT 3

accuracy *n* /'ækjʊərəsi/  
 alerted *v* /ə'lɜːtɪd/  
 alighted *v* /ə'laɪtɪd/  
 ambulance *n* /'æmbjʊləns/  
 anchorage *n* /'æŋkərɪdʒ/  
 apologize *v* /ə'pɒlədʒaɪz/  
 avalanche *n* /'ævələʊns/  
 awarded *v* /ə'wɔːdɪd/  
 benefits *n pl* /'benɪfɪts/  
 biography *n* /baɪ'ɒɡrəfi/  
 bus stop *n* /'bʌs stɒp/  
 cameraman *n* /'kæmərəmæn/  
 cautious *adj* /'kɔːʃəs/  
 character trait *n* /'kærəktə treɪt/  
 charismatic *adj* /,kærɪz'mætɪk/  
 clinging *v* /'klɪŋɪŋ/  
 clutch *v* /klʌtʃ/  
 collection *n* /kə'lekʃn/  
 competition *n* /,kɒmpə'tɪʃn/  
 cons *n pl* /kɒnz/  
 constituent *n* /kən'stɪtjuənt/  
 crafts *n pl* /kraɪfts/  
 deserted *adj* /dɪ'zɜːtɪd/  
 deserted *v* /dɪ'zɜːtɪd/  
 disbelief *n* /,dɪsbɪ'liːf/  
 disgusting *adj* /dɪs'gʌstɪŋ/  
 double *n* /'dʌbl/  
 downloading *v* /,daʊn'ləʊdɪŋ/  
 drift *n* /drɪft/  
 dull *adv* /dʌl/  
 dummy *n* /'dʌmi/  
 elk *n* /elk/  
 emaciated *adj* /ɪ'meɪsiətɪd/  
 experts *n pl* /'ekspɜːts/  
 feebly *adv* /'fiːbli/  
 fiancé *n* /fi'ənsɪ/  
 focus *v* /'fəʊkəs/  
 fuel *n* /'fjuːəl/  
 gaze *v* /geɪz/  
 gossip *n* /'ɡɒsɪp/  
 handfuls *n pl* /'hændfʊlz/  
 happily ever after /'hæpɪli ,evə(r) 'ɑːftə(r)/  
 haunted *v* /'həʊntɪd/  
 haunting *adj* /'həʊntɪŋ/  
 headline *n* /'hedlaɪn/  
 hibernation *n* /,haɪbə'neɪʃn/  
 hypothermia *n* /,haɪpə'θɜːmiə/  
 igloo *n* /'ɪɡluː/  
 in connection with (something) /ɪn kə'nekʃn wɪð .../  
 incident *n* /'ɪnsɪdənt/  
 injured *adj* /'ɪndʒəd/  
 intensive care *n* /ɪn,tensɪv 'keə(r)/  
 killer *n* /'kɪlə(r)/  
 lay bare /lei 'beə(r)/  
 limelight *n* /'laɪmlaɪt/  
 limitations *n pl* /,lɪmɪ'teɪʃnz/  
 lure *v* /ljʊə(r)/  
 manipulative *adj* /mə'nɪpjələtɪv/  
 masked *adj* /mɑːskt/  
 maternal *adj* /mə'tɜːnl/  
 melodrama *n* /'melədra:mə/  
 missing *adj* /'mɪsɪŋ/  
 modest *adj* /'mɒdɪst/  
 nature lover *n* /'neɪtʃə ,lʌvə(r)/  
 nerve *n* /nɜːv/  
 newly-built *adj* /,njuːli 'bɪlt/  
 news bulletin *n* /'njuːz ,bulətɪn/  
 notice *v* /'nəʊtɪs/  
 novelty *n* /'nɒvlti/  
 nutrition *n* /njuː'trɪʃn/  
 obsession *n* /əb'sesʃn/  
 obviously *adv* /əbviəsli/  
 overcoat *n* /'əʊvəkəʊt/  
 overhead *adv* /'əʊvəhed/  
 page-turner *n* /'peɪdʒ tɜːnə(r)/  
 play (something) out /pleɪ ... 'aʊt/  
 plunged *v* /plʌndʒd/  
 poor state *n* /'pɔː steɪt/  
 possessiveness *n* /pə'zesɪvnəs/  
 pound *v* /paʊnd/  
 powers *n pl* /'paʊəz/  
 prediction *n* /prɪ'dɪkʃn/  
 professor *n* /prə'fesə(r)/  
 promise *n* /'prɒmɪs/  
 property tycoon *n* /,prɒpəti 'taɪkuːn/  
 pros *n pl* /prəʊz/  
 psychiatrist *n* /saɪ'kaɪətrɪst/  
 psychological thriller *n* /saɪkə,lɒdʒɪkl 'θrɪlə(r)/  
 raid *n* /reɪd/  
 recover *v* /rɪ'kʌvə(r)/  
 remote *adj* /rɪ'məʊt/  
 repaired *v* /rɪ'peəd/  
 rescuer *n* /'reskjʊə(r)/  
 risking *v* /'rɪskɪŋ/  
 romance *n* /rəʊ'mæns/  
 romantic *adj* /rəʊ'mæntɪk/  
 roommate *n* /'rʊmmeɪt/



sacked *v* /sækt/  
 safety precautions *n pl* /'seɪfti  
 prɪ,kəʊ'fɛnz/  
 sanity *n* /'sænəti/  
 sceptical *adj* /'skeptɪkl/  
 scrape *v* /skreɪp/  
 security *n* /sɪ'kjʊərəti/  
 sensuous *adj* /'senʃuəs/  
 set *v* /set/  
 sinister *adj* /'sɪnɪstə(r)/  
 skiing *v* /'ski:ɪŋ/  
 sleeping bag *n* /'sli:pɪŋ bæɡ/  
 snowdrifts *n pl* /'snəʊdrɪfts/  
 snowmobile *n* /'snəʊməbi:l/  
 speculation *n* /,spekju'leɪʃn/  
 starred *v* /stɑ:d/  
 stench *n* /stentʃ/  
 stolen *v* /'stəʊlən/  
 streaming *v* /'stri:mɪŋ/  
 stuck *v* /stʌk/  
 stunt *n* /stʌnt/  
 stuntman *n* /'stʌntmæn/  
 sublime *n* /sə'blaɪm/  
 successful *adj* /sək'sesfl/  
 suicide *n* /'su:ɪsaɪd/  
 survive *v* /sə'vaɪv/  
 switch *v* /swɪtʃ/  
 synopses *n pl* /sɪ'nɒpsɪz/  
 tenants *n pl* /'tenənts/  
 thriller *n* /'θrɪlə(r)/  
 top of her class /'tɒp əv hə 'klɑ:s/  
 towed *v* /təʊd/  
 traffic jam *n* /'træfɪk dʒæm/  
 tragically *adv* /'trædʒɪkli/  
 transcend *v* /træn'send/  
 treat *v* /trɪt/  
 twisted *adj* /'twɪstɪd/  
 ultimate *adj* /'ʌltɪmət/  
 unbalanced *adj* /,ʌn'bælənst/  
 unwilling hero *n* /,ʌn,wɪlɪŋ  
 'hɪərəʊ/  
 van *n* /væn/  
 vanishing *v* /'vænɪʃɪŋ/  
 victim *n* /'vɪktɪm/  
 violent *adj* /'vaɪələnt/  
 What a drag! /wɒt ə 'dræɡ/  
 windscreen *n* /'wɪndskri:n/



## UNIT 4

admit *v* /əd'mɪt/  
 anti-social *n* /,ænti'səʊʃl/  
 appear *v* /ə'pɪə(r)/  
 arbitrary *adj* /'ɑ:bitrəri/  
 array *n* /ə'reɪ/  
 atheist *n* /'eɪθɪst/  
 authentic *adj* /ɔ:'θentɪk/  
 bearable *adj* /'beərəbl/  
 believable *adj* /bɪ'li:vəbl/  
 blissful *adj* /'blɪsfl/  
 Bon appetit! /,bɒn æpe'ti:  
 breath-taking *adj* /'breɪθteɪkɪŋ/  
 breeds *v* /bri:dz/  
 breeze *n* /bri:z/  
 brightest *adj* /'braɪtɪst/  
 bungee jumping *n* /'bʌndʒɪ  
 ,dʒʌmpɪŋ/

conceal *v* /kən'si:l/  
 conspiracy theory *n* /kən'spɪrəsi  
 ,θəri/  
 credible *adj* /'kredəbl/  
 diehard *adj* /'daɪhɑ:d/  
 dyslexic *n* /dɪs'leksɪk/  
 elaborate *adj* /'læbəreɪt/  
 encourage *v* /ɪn'kʌrɪdʒ/  
 fair *adj* /feə(r)/  
 fake *adj* /feɪk/  
 faked *v* /feɪkt/  
 farce *n* /fɑ:s/  
 fed up *adj* /,fed 'ʌp/  
 fiendish *adj* /'fi:ndɪʃ/  
 fluttering *v* /'flʌtərɪŋ/  
 footsteps *n pl* /'fʊtstɛps/  
 generous *adj* /'dʒenərəs/  
 genuine *adj* /'dʒenjʊn/  
 geological analysis *n*  
 /dʒi:ə,lɒdʒɪkl ə'næləsɪs/  
 give (somebody) a lift *v* /gɪv ...  
 ə 'lɪft/  
 guilty *adj* /'ɡɪltɪ/  
 happiness *n* /'hæpɪnəs/  
 hard *adj* /hɑ:d/  
 hatched *v* /hætʃt/  
 haunted *adj* /'həʊntɪd/  
 hoax *n* /həʊks/  
 hurt feelings /,hɜ:t 'fi:lɪŋz/  
 hypotheses *n pl* /haɪ'pɒθəsɪz/  
 implausible *adj* /ɪm'pləʊzəbl/  
 improve *v* /ɪm'pru:v/  
 insomniac *n* /ɪn'sɒmniæk/  
 Internet *n* /'ɪntənət/  
 intrusions *n pl* /ɪn'tru:ʒnz/  
 isolation *n* /,aɪsə'leɪʃn/  
 it suits you /ɪt 'sju:ts ju/  
 jazz *n* /dʒæz/  
 judge *n* /dʒʌdʒ/  
 justified *adj* /'dʒʌstɪfaɪd/  
 kind *adj* /kaɪnd/  
 legal *adj* /'li:gl/  
 light *adj* /laɪt/  
 like *v* /laɪk/  
 live *adj* /lɪv/  
 loathe *v* /ləʊð/  
 lousy *adj* /'ləʊzi/  
 mature *adj* /mə'tʃʊə(r)/  
 media *n* /'mi:diə/  
 MP *n* /,em'pi:  
 mundane *adj* /mʌn'deɪn/  
 NASA *n* /'næsə/  
 naturist *n* /'neɪtʃərɪst/  
 pacifist *n* /'pæsɪfɪst/  
 paranoia *n* /,pærə'nɔɪə/  
 plausible *adj* /'pləʊzəbl/  
 polite *adj* /pə'laɪt/  
 politician *n* /,pɒlə'tɪʃn/  
 private life *n* /'praɪvət laɪf/  
 probable *adj* /'prɒbəbl/  
 real *adj* /'ri:əl/  
 responsible *adj* /rɪ'spɒnsəbl/  
 ridiculous *adj* /rɪ'dɪkjələs/  
 roasted *v* /rəʊstɪd/  
 rumours *n pl* /'ru:məz/  
 safe *adj* /seɪf/  
 satellite video conferencing *n* /  
 'sætələɪt vɪdɪəʊ 'kɒnfərənsɪŋ/  
 scalding *adj* /'skɔ:ldɪŋ/

secret *n* /'si:krət/  
 shadows *n pl* /'ʃædəʊz/  
 sincere *adj* /sɪn'sɪə(r)/  
 single *n* /'sɪŋgl/  
 sparkling *adj* /'spɑ:klɪŋ/  
 squashed *v* /skwɒʃt/  
 still *adj* /stɪl/  
 stranded *v* /'strændɪd/  
 stunning *adj* /'stʌnɪŋ/  
 tampered *v* /'tæmpəd/  
 teetotaler *n* /,ti:'təʊtlə(r)/  
 thick *adj* /θɪk/  
 tiny *adj* /'taɪni/  
 tough *adj* /tʌf/  
 treasure *n* /'treʒə(r)/  
 tropical *adj* /'trɒpɪkl/  
 UFO *n* /,ju:ef'əʊ/  
 unanimously *adv* /ju'nænɪməsli/  
 unemployed *n* /,ʌnɪm'plɔɪd/  
 unsuspecting *adj* /,ʌnsə'spektɪŋ/  
 urgent *adj* /'ɜ:dʒənt/  
 useless *adj* /'ju:sləs/  
 vegan *n* /'vi:ɡən/  
 vegetarian *n* /,vedʒə'teəriən/  
 white lie *n* /,waɪt 'laɪ/  
 widespread *adj* /'waɪdspred/



## UNIT 5

a good talking to /ə gud 'tɔ:kɪŋ  
 tə/  
 access *n* /'ækses/  
 admire *v* /əd'maɪə(r)/  
 advertisement *n* /əd'vɜ:tɪsmənt/  
 adviser *n* /əd'vaɪzə(r)/  
 against the odds /ə,ɡeɪnst ðə  
 'ɒdz/  
 ambition *n* /æm'bɪʃn/  
 ambitious *adj* /æm'bɪʃəs/  
 annual *adj* /'ænjʊəl/  
 apps *n pl* /æps/  
 arrangement *n* /ə'reɪndʒmənt/  
 aspect *n* /'æspekt/  
 aspirations *n pl* /,æspə'reɪʃnz/  
 assistance *n* /ə'sɪstəns/  
 at the moment /ət ðə 'məʊmənt/  
 attention *n* /ə'tenʃn/  
 attitude *n* /'ætɪtju:d/  
 audition *n* /ɔ:'dɪʃn/  
 autobiographical *adj* /  
 ,ɔ:tə,bəʊ'græfɪkl/  
 automatically *adv* /,ɔ:tə'mætɪkli/  
 average *adj* /'ævərɪdʒ/  
 banker *n* /'bæŋkə(r)/  
 book *v* /bʊk/  
 browses *v* /'braʊzɪz/  
 burden *n* /'bɜ:dn/  
 burnt *adj* /bɜ:nt/  
 business *n* /'bɪznəs/  
 cabin crew *n* /'kæbɪn kru:  
 call button *n* /'kɔ:l,bʌtn/  
 calm down *v* /kɑ:m 'daʊn/  
 campaigning *v* /kæm'peɪnɪŋ/  
 career *n* /kə'riə(r)/  
 carry on *v* /'kæri ɒn/  
 challenges *n pl* /'tʃælɪndʒɪz/  
 chilly *adj* /'tʃɪli/

clients *n pl* /'klaɪənts/  
 climate *n* /'klaɪmət/  
 coach *n* /kəʊtʃ/  
 community service *n* /  
 kə,mju:nə'ti 'sɜ:vɪs/  
 complicated *adj* /'kɒmplɪkeɪtɪd/  
 condition *n* /kən'dɪʃn/  
 conscientious *adj* /,kɒnʃi'enʃəs/  
 controlling *v* /kən'trəʊlɪŋ/  
 council estate *n* /'kaʊnsəl ɪ,steɪt/  
 crash *v* /kræʃ/  
 crew *n* /kru:  
 cricket *n* /'krɪkɪt/  
 cruising speed *n* /'kru:zɪŋ spi:d/  
 cure *n* /kjʊə(r)/  
 customer services /,kʌstəmə  
 'sɜ:vɪsɪz/  
 debut album *n* /'deɪbjʊ: ,ælbəm/  
 decision *n* /dɪ'sɪʒn/  
 degree *n* /dɪ'ɡri:  
 department *n* /dɪ'pɑ:tmənt/  
 developed economies *n pl*  
 /dɪ,veləpt ɪ'kɒnəmɪz/  
 diary *n* /'daɪəri/  
 downloads *n pl* /daʊnləʊdz/  
 dramatically *adv* /drə'mætɪkli/  
 draw attention to *v* /drɔ: ə'tenʃn  
 tə/  
 dreadful *adj* /'dredfl/  
 dual *adj* /'dju:əl/  
 duty free shopping *n* /,dju:ti 'fri:  
 ,ʃɒpɪŋ/  
 earning *v* /'ɜ:nɪŋ/  
 eating disorder *n* /'i:tɪŋ  
 dɪs,ɔ:də(r)/  
 enough of (something or some-  
 body) /ɪ'nʌf əv .../  
 entire *adj* /ɪn'taɪə(r)/  
 entrepreneur *n* /,ɒntrəprə'nɜ:(r)/  
 exploits *n pl* /'eksplɔɪts/  
 extend *v* /ɪk'stend/  
 fasten *v* /'fɑ:sn/  
 fatigue *n* /fə'ti:g/  
 fault *n* /fɔ:lt/  
 festival *n* /'festɪvl/  
 flesh *n* /fleʃ/  
 funding *n* /'fʌndɪŋ/  
 fur *n* /fɜ:(r)/  
 Give me a ring. /,ɡɪv mi ə 'rɪŋ/  
 grandchildren *n* /'græntʃɪldrən/  
 grants *n pl* /grɑ:nts/  
 grow up *v* /grəʊ 'ʌp/  
 guarantee *n* /,gærən'ti:  
 guitar *n* /ɡɪ'tɑ:(r)/  
 hang about *v* /hæŋ ə'baʊt/  
 hard-working *adj* /,hɑ:d 'wɜ:kɪŋ/  
 highlight *v* /'haɪlaɪt/  
 hit *n* /hɪt/  
 hold *v* /həʊld/  
 horse racing *n* /'hɔ:s ,reɪsɪŋ/  
 hotel *n* /həʊ'tel/  
 idol *n* /'aɪdl/  
 ignored *v* /ɪɡ'nɔ:d/  
 illness *n* /'ɪlnəs/  
 in common *idiom* /ɪn 'kɒmən/  
 in progress *idiom* /ɪn 'prɒɡres/  
 influences *n pl* /ɪnfluənsɪz/  
 influential *adj* /ɪnflu'ensfl/  
 injection *n* /ɪn'dʒekʃn/



inspiration *n* /ˌɪnspə'reɪʃn/  
 inspiring *adj* /ɪn'spaɪərɪŋ/  
 intention *n* /ɪn'tenʃn/  
 jam *n* /dʒæm/  
 jamming session *n* /'dʒæmɪŋ  
 ,seʃn/  
 keen *adj* /ki:n/  
 landing card *n* /'lændɪŋ kɑ:d/  
 lawyer *n* /'lɔ:jə(r)/  
 lazy *adj* /'leɪzi/  
 liar *n* /'laɪə(r)/  
 make a success of /,meɪk ə sək'ses  
 əv/  
 mentoring *v* /'mentɔ:ɪŋ/  
 mess *n* /mes/  
 milestone *n* /'maɪlstəʊn/  
 military service *n* /'mɪlətri  
 ,sɜ:vɪs/  
 millionaire *n* /,mɪljə'neə(r)/  
 mobile *adj* /'məʊbaɪl/  
 mood *n* /mu:d/  
 Multiple Sclerosis *n* /,mʌltɪpl  
 sklə'reʊsɪs/  
 My pleasure. /maɪ 'pleʒə(r)/  
 necessary *adj* /'nesəsəri/  
 needs *n pl* /ni:dz/  
 noise *n* /nɔɪz/  
 obsessive *adj* /əb'sesɪv/  
 only child *n* /,əʊnli 'tʃaɪld/  
 overrun *v* /,əʊvə'ran/  
 packing *v* /'pækɪŋ/  
 panic *n* /'pænik/  
 pills *n pl* /pɪlz/  
 play *n* /pleɪ/  
 pocket money *n* /'pɒkɪt ,mʌni/  
 pop releases *n pl* /'pɒp rɪ,lɪ:sɪz/  
 posted *v* /'pəʊstɪd/  
 presentation *n* /,prezn'teɪʃn/  
 press *n* /pres/  
 pride *n* /praɪd/  
 primarily *adv* /praɪ'merəli/  
 prime minister *n* /,praɪm  
 'mɪnɪstə(r)/  
 proud *adj* /praʊd/  
 put your foot in it /,pʊt jə 'fʊt  
 ɪn ɪt/  
 qualifications *n pl*  
 /,kwɒlɪfɪ'keɪʃnz/  
 racing driver *n* /'reɪsɪŋ  
 ,draɪvə(r)/  
 rate *n* /reɪt/  
 reconcile *v* /'rekənsaɪl/  
 resign *v* /rɪ'zaɪn/  
 reveal *v* /rɪ'vi:l/  
 rugby *n* /'rʌɡbi/  
 scared stiff /skeəd 'stɪf/  
 seatbelt *n* /'si:tbelɪt/  
 setting up *v* /,setɪŋ 'ʌp/  
 similar *adj* /'sɪmələ(r)/  
 skim-read *v* /'skɪm rɪd/  
 sponge cake *n* /'spʌndʒ keɪk/  
 spontaneous *adj* /spɒn'teɪniəs/  
 standard *n* /'stændəd/  
 standstill *n* /'stændstɪl/  
 (the) States *n* /steɪts/  
 stressed *v* /strest/  
 strong *adj* /strɒŋ/  
 student *n* /'stju:dnt/  
 suggestion *n* /sə'dʒestʃən/

sulk *v* /sʌlk/  
 summarize *v* /'sʌməraɪz/  
 supper *n* /'sʌpə(r)/  
 talent *n* /'tælənt/  
 tastes *n pl* /teɪsts/  
 tax relief *n* /'tæks rɪ,lɪ:f/  
 technology *n* /tek'nɒlədʒi/  
 teenager *n* /'ti:neɪdʒə(r)/  
 temperature *n* /'temprətʃə(r)/  
 timeline *n* /'taɪmlaɪn/  
 timetable *n* /'taɪmteɪbl/  
 torchbearer *n* /'tɔ:tʃ'beərə(r)/  
 training *n* /'treɪnɪŋ/  
 turbulence *n* /'tɜ:bjələns/  
 turning point *n* /'tɜ:nɪŋ pɔɪnt/  
 upright *adj* /'ʌpraɪt/  
 variety *n* /və'reɪəti/  
 vision *n* /'vɪʒn/  
 webpages *n pl* /'webpeɪdʒɪz/  
 What a shame! /,wʌt ə 'ʃeɪm/  
 wheelchair *n* /'wi:lʃeə(r)/  
 wonderful *adj* /'wʌndəfl/  
 work placement *n* /'wɜ:k  
 ,pleɪsmənt/



## UNIT 6

afford *v* /ə'fɔ:d/  
 ailing *adj* /'eɪlɪŋ/  
 animation *n* /,æni'meɪʃn/  
 anti-globalization *n* /,æntɪ  
 gləʊbəlaɪ'zeɪʃn/  
 appeal *n* /ə'pi:l/  
 attachment *n* /ə'tætʃmənt/  
 attract *v* /ə'trækt/  
 bitterly *adv* /'bɪtəli/  
 blend *n* /blend/  
 blood sports *n pl* /'blʌd spɔ:ts/  
 booming *v* /'bu:ɪŋ/  
 brands *n pl* /brændz/  
 broadcast *v* /'brɔ:dkɑ:st/  
 burgled *v* /'bɜ:gld/  
 camera *n* /'kæmə(r)/  
 capital *n* /'kæpɪtəl/  
 catering college *n* /'kɛtərɪŋ  
 ,kɒlɪdʒ/  
 chains *n pl* /tʃeɪnz/  
 cheat *n* /tʃi:t/  
 chefs *n pl* /ʃefs/  
 church *n* /tʃɜ:ʃ/  
 clones *n pl* /kləʊnz/  
 clubbing *n* /'klʌbɪŋ/  
 co-founder *n* /kəʊ 'faʊndə(r)/  
 coffeemaker *n* /'kɒfimeɪkə(r)/  
 comfy *adj* /'kʌmfɪ/  
 commercialism *n*  
 /kə'mɜ:ʃəɪzəm/  
 compete *v* /kəm'pi:t/  
 cool *adj* /ku:l/  
 crimes *n pl* /kraɪmz/  
 criminals *n pl* /'krɪmɪnz/  
 criticism *n* /'krɪtɪsɪzəm/  
 data storage *n* /'deɪtə ,stɔ:ɪdʒ/  
 demonstration *n*  
 /,demən'streɪʃn/  
 determination *n* /dɪ,tɜ:mɪ'neɪʃn/  
 devotion *n* /drɪ'vəʊʃn/

dominance *n* /'dɒmɪnəns/  
 drop out of /,drɒp 'aʊt əv/  
 dustman *n* /'dʌstmən/  
 earn *v* /ɜ:n/  
 economy *n* /ɪ'kɒnəmi/  
 employee welfare *n* /ɪm,plɔɪ:  
 'welfeə(r)/  
 energy *n* /'enədʒi/  
 enthusiasm *n* /ɪn'θju:ziæzəm/  
 equipment *n* /ɪ'kwɪpmənt/  
 espresso *n* /e'spresəʊ/  
 essential *adj* /ɪ'senʃl/  
 expand *v* /ɪk'spænd/  
 export *n* /v 'eksɔ:t / ɪk'spɔ:t/  
 extract *n* /'ekstrækt/  
 fair trade *n* /feə 'treɪd/  
 fame *n* /feɪm/  
 fattening *v* /'fætɪŋ/  
 fierce *adj* /fɪəs/  
 fine *adj* /faɪn/  
 fluids *n pl* /'fluɪdz/  
 former *adj* /'fɔ:mə(r)/  
 founder members *n pl* /,faʊndə  
 'membəz/  
 fresh *adj* /fref/  
 fridge *n* /frɪdʒ/  
 gadget guru *n* /'gædʒɪt ,ɡɜ:rʊ/  
 genuinely *adv* /'dʒenjuɪnli/  
 grown-up *adj* /,grəʊn 'ʌp/  
 herbs *n pl* /hɜ:bz/  
 hesitation *n* /,hezɪ'teɪʃn/  
 hire *v* /'haɪə(r)/  
 hold-ups *n pl* /'həʊld ʌps/  
 hope *v* /həʊp/  
 horrible *adj* /'hɒrəbl/  
 import *n* /v 'ɪm'pɔ:t/  
 ingredients *n pl* /ɪn'ɡri:diənts/  
 insult *n* /v 'ɪn'sʌlt/  
 insurance *n* /ɪn'ʃɔ:ɪrəns/  
 irresistible *adj* /,ɪrɪ'zɪstəbl/  
 knives *n pl* /naɪvz/  
 knowledge *n* /'nɒlɪdʒ/  
 launch *v* /lɔ:ntʃ/  
 logo *n* /'ləʊɡəʊ/  
 lounge *n* /laʊndʒ/  
 loyal *adj* /'lɔɪəl/  
 luck *n* /lʌk/  
 majority *n* /mə'dʒɔ:rəti/  
 make it big /,meɪk ɪt 'bɪɡ/  
 marketing *n* /'mɑ:kɪtɪŋ/  
 media personality *n* /,mi:diə  
 pɜ:sə'næləti/  
 model *n* /'mɒdl/  
 multinational corporation *n*  
 /,mʌltɪ'næʃnəl ,kɔ:pə'reɪʃn/  
 natural *adj* /'nætʃrəl/  
 networked *v* /'netwɜ:kt/  
 numerous *adj* /'nju:mərəs/  
 offhand *adv* /,ɒf'hænd/  
 opposition *n* /,ɒpə'zɪʃn/  
 out of curiosity /'aʊt əv  
 ,kjuəri'ɒsəti/  
 overnight success /,əʊvənəɪt  
 sək'ses/  
 overwhelmed *v* /,əʊvə'welmd/  
 party *n* /'pɑ:ti/  
 passionately *adv* /'pæʃənətli/  
 permit *n* /v 'pɜ:mɪt / pə'mɪt/  
 plenty *n* /'plenti/

point and click graphics *n pl*  
 /,pɔɪnt ən 'kɪk ,ɡræfɪks/  
 policy *n* /'pɒləsi/  
 pollution *n* /pə'lju:ʃn/  
 popular *adj* /'pɒpjələ(r)/  
 possessions *n pl* /pə'zeʃnz/  
 powder *n* /'paʊdə(r)/  
 power struggle *n* /'paʊə ,strʌɡl/  
 profitability *n* /,prɒfɪtə'bɪləti/  
 progress *n* /'prəʊɡres/  
 protests *n pl* /'prəʊtests/  
 pub *n* /pʌb/  
 qualified *adj* /'kwɒlɪfaɪd/  
 quality *adj* /'kwɒləti/  
 range *n* /reɪndʒ/  
 recession *n* /rɪ'sesn/  
 recipe *n* /'resəpi/  
 refund *n* /v 'rɪ:fʌnd / rɪ'fʌnd/  
 religious *adj* /rɪ'lɪdʒəs/  
 remote *n* /rɪ'məʊt/  
 reputation *n* /,repju'teɪʃn/  
 restaurateur *n* /,restərə'tɜ:(r)/  
 retailer *n* /'rɪ:teɪlə(r)/  
 rivals *n pl* /'raɪvlz/  
 roaster *n* /'rəʊstə(r)/  
 rock and roll *n* /,rɒk ən 'rɔ:l/  
 scientific calculator *n* /saɪəntɪfɪk  
 'kælkjuleɪtə(r)/  
 scooter *n* /'sku:tə(r)/  
 sleek *adj* /sli:k/  
 software *n* /'sɒftweə(r)/  
 soundtrack *n* /'saʊndtræk/  
 speciality coffees *n pl* /speʃi,jələti  
 'kɒfɪz/  
 spotted *v* /'spɒtɪd/  
 stylish *adj* /'staɪlɪʃ/  
 swiftly *adv* /'swɪftli/  
 synonymous *adj* /sɪ'nɒnɪməs/  
 target *n* /'tɑ:ɡɪt/  
 techniques *n pl* /tek'ni:ks/  
 traffic *n* /'træfɪk/  
 transport *n* /v 'trænsɔ:t/  
 tribute *n* /'trɪbjʊt/  
 unemployment *n*  
 /,ʌnɪm'plɔɪmənt/  
 unhealthy *adj* /ʌn'helθi/  
 user-friendly *adj* /,ju:zə 'frendli/  
 utilitarian *adj* /,ju:tɪlɪ'teəriən/  
 valued *adj* /'vælju:d/  
 vicar *n* /'vɪkə(r)/  
 violence *n* /'vaɪələns/  
 vitally *adv* /'vaɪtəli/  
 wasted *v* /'weɪstɪd/  
 whisky *n* /'wɪski/  
 world domination *n* /,wɜ:ld  
 dɒmɪ'neɪʃn/  
 worldwide *adj* /'wɜ:ldwaɪd/  
 zipping *v* /'zɪpɪŋ/



## UNIT 7

adore *v* /ə'dɔ:(r)/  
 ageing *v* /'eɪdʒɪŋ/  
 all good things must come to an  
 end /'ɔ:l ɡʊd ,θɪŋz mʌst kʌm tə  
 ən 'end/  
 anxious *adj* /'æŋkʃəs/



argument *n* /'ɑ:gjʊmənt/  
 arranged marriage *n* /ə'reɪndʒd  
 'mæriɪdʒ/  
 behaviour *n* /bɪ'heɪvjə(r)/  
 blame *v* /bleɪm/  
 bound *v* /baʊnd/  
 bright *adj* /braɪt/  
 can't stand (something) /kɑ:nt  
 'stænd .../  
 capital cities *n pl* /,kæpɪtl 'sɪtɪz/  
 cast my vote *v* /,kɑ:st maɪ 'vəʊt/  
 cheque *n* /tʃek/  
 choices *n pl* /tʃɔɪsɪz/  
 commitments *n pl* /kə'mɪtmənts/  
 controlled *v* /kən'trəʊld/  
 cough *n* /kɒf/  
 crazy about (somebody/some-  
 thing) /'kreɪzɪ ə,baut .../  
 crossroads *n pl* /'krɒsrəʊdɪz/  
 cultural values *n pl* /,kʌltʃərəl  
 'væljʊz/  
 debts *n pl* /dets/  
 denial *n* /dɪ'naɪəl/  
 depressed *adj* /dɪ'prest/  
 designated area *n* /,deɪzɪgneɪtɪd  
 'eəriə/  
 do with something /'du: wɪð  
 ,sʌmθɪŋ/  
 dying for /'daɪŋ fə(r)/  
 engaged *adj* /ɪn'geɪdʒd/  
 exaggeration *n* /ɪg,zædʒə'reɪʃn/  
 exhausted *v* /ɪg'zɔ:stɪd/  
 expensive *adj* /ɪk'spensɪv/  
 fear *n* /fɪə(r)/  
 fit *adj* /fɪt/  
 fond *adj* /fɒnd/  
 forget *v* /fə'get/  
 forgive *v* /fə'gɪv/  
 generation *n* /,dʒenə'reɪʃn/  
 get on well /,get ɒn 'wel/  
 grass *n* /grɑ:s/  
 grown up *n* /,grəʊn 'ʌp/  
 hit the roof /,hɪt ðə 'ru:f/  
 immortal *adj* /ɪ'mɔ:tl/  
 kidding *v* /'kɪdɪŋ/  
 knackered *adj* /'nækəd/  
 loaded *adj* /'ləʊdɪd/  
 madly in love /,mædli ɪn 'lʌv/  
 married *v* /'mæɪrɪd/  
 middle age *n* /,mɪdl 'eɪdʒ/  
 miraculously *adv* /mɪ'rækjələsli/  
 mortgage *n* /'mɔ:ɡɪdʒ/  
 mutter *v* /'mʌtə/  
 nationalities *n pl* /,næʃə'nælətɪz/  
 naughty *adj* /'nɔ:ti/  
 nervously *adv* /'nɜ:vəsli/  
 not keen on (somebody/some-  
 thing) /nɒt 'ki:n ɒn .../  
 operation *n* /,ɒpə'reɪʃn/  
 out of breath /,aʊt əv 'breθ/  
 out of order /,aʊt əv 'ɔ:də(r)/  
 overlook *v* /,əʊvə'lʊk/  
 paid-up *adj* /'peɪd ʌp/  
 palace *n* /'pæləs/  
 passionate *adj* /'pæʃənət/  
 pause *n* /pɔ:z/  
 pension *n* /'penʃn/  
 phase *n* /feɪz/  
 phenomenon *n* /fə'nɒmɪnən/

postponed *v* /pə'spəʊnd/  
 prize *n* /praɪz/  
 puppy *n* /'pʌpi/  
 reality *n* /rɪ'æləti/  
 refusal *n* /rɪ'fju:zl/  
 refuse *v* /rɪ'fju:z/  
 rented *v* /'rentɪd/  
 reserved *v* /rɪ'zɜ:vɪd/  
 rich *adj* /rɪtʃ/  
 root *n* /ru:t/  
 sake of (somebody) *n* /'sa:k  
 əv .../  
 serious *adj* /'sɪəriəs/  
 shrugged *v* /ʃrʌɡd/  
 sizeable *adj* /'saɪzəbl/  
 society *n* /sə'saɪəti/  
 spoilt for choice /,spɔɪlt fə 'tʃɔɪs/  
 swallow your pride /,swɒləʊ jə  
 'praɪd/  
 sweetly *adv* /'swi:tli/  
 taxes *n pl* /'tæksɪz/  
 temperamental *adj*  
 /,temprə'mentl/  
 thick as planks /,θɪk əz 'plæŋks/  
 twin *n* /twɪn/  
 understatement *n*  
 /'ʌndəsteɪtmənt/  
 visa *n* /'vi:zə/  
 weddings *n pl* /'wedɪŋz/  
 well off *adj* /wel 'ɒf/  
 worship *v* /'wɜ:ʃɪp/  
 youth *n* /ju:θ/



## UNIT 8

addicted *v* /ə'dɪktɪd/  
 adjacent *adj* /ə'dʒeɪsnt/  
 adventurous *adj* /əd'ventʃərəs/  
 afterthought *n* /'ɑ:ftəθɔ:t/  
 aim *n* /eɪm/  
 album *n* /'ælbəm/  
 anonymous *adj* /ə'nɒnɪməs/  
 arrogant *adj* /'ærəɡənt/  
 authorities *n pl* /ɔ:'θɒrətɪz/  
 award *n* /ə'wɔ:d/  
 awful *adj* /'ɔ:fl/  
 bald *adj* /bɔ:ld/  
 behave *v* /bɪ'heɪv/  
 beyond description /bɪ,jənd  
 dr'skrɪpʃn/  
 bonfire *n* /'bɒnfəɪə(r)/  
 boring *adj* /'bɔ:ɪŋ/  
 brain *n* /breɪn/  
 branches *n pl* /'brɑ:ntʃɪz/  
 break down *v* /breɪk 'daʊn/  
 bruise *n* /bru:z/  
 bullies *n pl* /'bʊlɪz/  
 burglar *n* /'bɜ:ɡlə(r)/  
 businessman *n* /'bɪznəsmeɪn/  
 busy *adj* /'bɪzi/  
 camouflaging *v* /'kæməfla:ʒɪŋ/  
 cement *n* /sɪ'ment/  
 challenging *adj* /tʃælɪndʒɪŋ/  
 clever *adj* /'kleɪvə(r)/  
 co-star *n* /'kəʊ stɑ:(r)/  
 comforting *v* /'kʌmfətɪŋ/  
 competitive *adj* /kəm'petətɪv/

completely *adv* /kəm'pli:tli/  
 conceited *adj* /kən'si:tɪd/  
 conservancy *n* /kən'sɜ:vənsi/  
 coral reef *n* /kɒrəl 'ri:f/  
 countryside *n* /'kʌntrɪsaɪd/  
 dangerous *adj* /'deɪndʒərəs/  
 delicious *adj* /dɪ'lɪʃəs/  
 delighted *adj* /dɪ'laɪtɪd/  
 desert *n* /dɪ'zɜ:t/  
 detect *v* /dɪ'tekt/  
 diagnose *v* /,daɪəg'nəʊz/  
 disappointing *adj* /,dɪsə'pɔɪntɪŋ/  
 disaster *adj* /dɪ'zɑ:stə(r)/  
 documentary *n* /,dɒkjʊ'mentri/  
 downpour *n* /'daʊnpə:(r)/  
 driving test *n* /'draɪvɪŋ test/  
 drums *n pl* /drʌmz/  
 embarrassing *adj* /ɪm'bærəsɪŋ/  
 enormous *adj* /ɪ'noʊməs/  
 exactly *adv* /ɪg'zæktli/  
 excellent *adj* /'eksələnt/  
 excited *adj* /ɪk'saɪtɪd/  
 exhausted *adj* /ɪg'zɔ:stɪd/  
 extraordinary *adj* /ɪk'strɔ:dnri/  
 extreme *adj* /ɪk'stri:m/  
 extremely *adv* /ɪk'stri:mli/  
 fascinating *adj* /'fæsɪneɪtɪŋ/  
 goods *n pl* /ɡʊdz/  
 gorgeous *adj* /'ɡɔ:dʒəs/  
 graffiti *n* /grə'fi:ti/  
 grandest *adj* /'grændɪst/  
 handsome *adj* /'hænsəm/  
 hard luck story /,hɑ:d 'lʌk stɔ:ri/  
 hard to believe /,hɑ:d tə brɪ'li:v/  
 heat exhaustion *n* /'hi:t  
 ɪg,zɔ:stʃən/  
 hectic *adj* /'hektɪk/  
 humble *adj* /'hʌmbəl/  
 impressed *v* /ɪm'prest/  
 impression *n* /ɪm'preʃn/  
 interesting *adj* /'ɪntrestɪŋ/  
 jail *n* /dʒeɪl/  
 joke *n* /dʒəʊk/  
 land of opportunity *n* /,lənd əv  
 ɒpə'tju:nəti/  
 landscape *n* /'lændskeɪp/  
 last but not least /,lɑ:st bʌt nɒt  
 'li:st/  
 laughing matter *n* /,lɑ:fɪŋ  
 'mætə(r)/  
 learning difficulties *n pl* /'lɜ:nɪŋ  
 ,dɪfɪkəltɪz/  
 legends *n pl* /'ledʒəndz/  
 listed building *n* /,lɪstɪd 'bɪldɪŋ/  
 locations *n pl* /ləʊ'keɪʃnz/  
 marvelous *adj* /'mɑ:vələs/  
 miner *n* /'maɪnə(r)/  
 miserable *adj* /'mɪzərəbl/  
 modern *adj* /'mɒdn/  
 mournful *adj* /'mɔ:nfl/  
 musical *adj* /'mjuzɪkl/  
 musical *n* /'mjuzɪkl/  
 neglected *adj* /nɪ'glektɪd/  
 night club *n* /'naɪt klʌb/  
 nostrils *n pl* /'nɒstrəlz/  
 obey *v* /ə'beɪ/  
 old lady *n* /,əʊld 'leɪdi/  
 ordinary *adj* /'ɔ:dnri/  
 pains *n pl* /peɪnz/  
 panic *v* /'pænɪk/  
 perfect *adj* /'pɜ:fɪkt/  
 periods *n pl* /'pɪəriədɪz/  
 persuade *v* /pə'sweɪd/  
 pleased *adj* /pli:zd/  
 plump *adj* /plʌmp/  
 praise *n* /preɪz/  
 predict *v* /prɪ'dɪkt/  
 pretentious *adj* /prɪ'tenʃəs/  
 priceless *adj* /'praɪsləs/  
 production *n* /prə'dʌkʃn/  
 profusely *adv* /prə'fju:sli/  
 properly *adv* /'prɒpəli/  
 pruner *n* /'pru:nə(r)/  
 pyramids *n pl* /'pɪrəmɪdɪz/  
 real estate agent *n* /'ri:əl ɪ,steɪt  
 ,eɪdʒənt/  
 really *adv* /'ri:əli/  
 recommend *v* /,rekə'mend/  
 rehydration *adj* /,ri:'haɪdreɪʃn/  
 relaxing *adj* /rɪ'læksɪŋ/  
 revising *v* /rɪ'vaɪzɪŋ/  
 scene of the crime /,si:n əv ðə  
 'kraɪm/  
 sceptically *adv* /'skeptɪkli/  
 self-important *adj* /,self  
 ɪm'pɔ:tənt/  
 sensation *n* /sen'seɪʃn/  
 seriously *adv* /'sɪəriəsli/  
 shocking *adj* /'ʃɒkɪŋ/  
 silly *adj* /'sɪli/  
 situated *adj* /'sɪtʃueɪtɪd/  
 skyline *n* /'skalaɪn/  
 soaking *adj* /'səʊkɪŋ/  
 solitude *n* /'sɒlɪtju:d/  
 sought *v* /sɔ:t/  
 split-level home *n* /,splɪt levl  
 'həʊm/  
 stuck indoors /,stʌk ɪn'dɔ:z/  
 stupidly *adv* /'stju:pɪdli/  
 sunrise *n* /'sʌnraɪz/  
 taxi *n* /'tæksi/  
 thank goodness /,θæŋk 'ɡʊdnəs/  
 thrilled *v* /θrɪld/  
 tired *adj* /'taɪəd/  
 topped the charts /,tɒpt ðə  
 'tʃɑ:ts/  
 torches *n pl* /'tɔ:tfɪz/  
 touching *adj* /'tʌtʃɪŋ/  
 tram *n* /træm/  
 tree climber *n* /'tri:'klaɪmə(r)/  
 tree house *n* /'tri:'haʊs/  
 treetops *n pl* /'tri:tɒps/  
 tribe *n* /traɪb/  
 triplets *n pl* /'trɪpləts/  
 unusual *adj* /ʌn'ju:ʒuəl/  
 valuable *adj* /'væljuəbl/  
 view *n* /vju:/  
 vote *v* /vəʊt/  
 wallet *n* /'wɒlɪt/  
 What a relief. /,wɒt ə rɪ'li:f/  
 workmanship *n* /'wɜ:kmənʃɪp/  
 worn *adj* /wɔ:n/





## UNIT 9

absent-minded *adj* /æbsənt  
'maɪndɪd/  
antique fair *n* /æn,tɪk 'feə(r)/  
apart *adv* /ə'pɑ:t/  
argumentative *adj*  
/ɑ:gju'mentətɪv/  
auctions *n pl* /'ɒkʃnz/  
bedtime *n* /'bedtaɪm/  
big-headed *adj* /bɪg 'hedɪd/  
blew up *v* /blu: 'ʌp/  
bloke *n* /bləʊk/  
blouse *n* /blaʊz/  
boiling hot /bɔɪlɪŋ 'hɒt/  
bored stiff /bɔ:d 'stɪf/  
borrow *v* /'bɒrəʊ/  
brand new /brænd 'nju:/  
breadwinner *n* /'bredwɪnə(r)/  
builder *n* /'bɪldə(r)/  
bygone era *n* /'baɪɡən ,ɪərə/  
cabinet *n* /'kæbɪnət/  
car boot sales *n pl* /,kɑ: 'bu:t  
seɪlz/  
central heating *n* /,sentrəl 'hɪtɪŋ/  
cleverly *adv* /'klevəli/  
clumsy *adj* /'klʌmzi/  
colleagues *n pl* /'kɒli:gz/  
conveniences *n pl*  
/kən'vi:niənsɪz/  
coolest *adj* /'ku:lɪst/  
cosy *adj* /'kəʊzi/  
cottage *n* /'kɒtɪdʒ/  
council worker *n* /'kaʊnsl  
,wɜ:kə(r)/  
courtship *n* /'kɔ:tʃɪp/  
cutlery *n* /'kʌtləri/  
dead easy /,ded 'i:zi/  
devotes *v* /dɪ'vəʊts/  
distressing *adj* /dɪ'stresɪŋ/  
drop me a line /drɒp mi ə 'laɪn/  
easy-going *adj* /,i:zi 'ɡəʊɪŋ/  
ecstatic *adj* /ɪk'stætɪk/  
entertainment *n* /,entə'teɪnmənt/  
era *n* /'ɪərə/  
factual *adj* /'fæktʃuəl/  
fantasy world *n* /'fæntəsi ,wɜ:ld/  
fast food *n* /,fɑ:st 'fu:d/  
features *n pl* /'fi:tʃəz/  
feminine *adj* /'femənɪn/  
fireplace *n* /'faɪəpleɪs/  
fittings *n pl* /'fɪtɪŋz/  
flat cap *n* /'flæt kæp/  
freezing cold /,fri:zɪŋ 'kəʊld/  
fridge freezer *n* /,frɪdʒ 'fri:zə(r)/  
furious *adj* /'fjʊəriəs/  
gadgets *n pl* /'ɡædʒɪts/  
get in touch /,get ɪn 'tʌtʃ/  
giggling *v* /'ɡɪɡlɪŋ/  
gone to a lot of trouble /'ɡɒn tə ə  
,lɒt əv 'trʌbl/  
graphic designer *n* /,ɡræfɪk  
dɪ'zaɪnə(r)/  
great big /ɡreɪt 'bɪɡ/  
habit *n* /'hæbɪt/  
hairdresser *n* /'headresə(r)/  
halcyon time *n* /'hælsɪən taɪm/  
hand-picked *adj* /,hænd 'pɪkt/

haven *n* /'heɪvn/  
hectic *adj* /'hektɪk/  
home-made *adj* /,həʊm 'meɪd/  
hours on end /,aʊəz ɒn 'end/  
immaculate *adj* /ɪ'mækjələt/  
insanely *adv* /ɪn'seɪnli/  
jealous *adj* /'dʒeləs/  
lab *n* /læb/  
lady *n* /'leɪdi/  
ladylike *adj* /'leɪdɪləɪk/  
like-minded *adj* /,laɪk 'maɪndɪd/  
loo *n* /lu:/  
lose touch /lu:z 'tʌtʃ/  
mad *adj* /mæd/  
marking time /,ma:kiŋ 'taɪm/  
mean *adj* /mi:n/  
meet up *v* /mi:t 'ʌp/  
members *n pl* /'membəz/  
microwave oven *n* /,maɪkrəweɪv  
'ʌvən/  
mod cons *n pl* /,mɒd 'kɒnz/  
nostalgic *adj* /nɒ'stældʒɪk/  
nosy *adj* /'nəʊzi/  
obsessed *v* /əb'sest/  
opposing views /ə,pəʊzɪŋ 'vju:z/  
ordeal *n* /ɔ:'di:ɪl/  
original *adj* /ə'ɹɪdʒənəl/  
pantry *n* /'pæntri/  
passion *n* /'pæʃn/  
past *adj* /pɑ:st/  
patronized *v* /'pætrənaɪzd/  
pencil skirt *n* /'pensl ,skɜ:t/  
petrol *n* /'petrəl/  
pinny *n* /'pɪni/  
plastic *n* /'plæstɪk/  
proposed *v* /prə'pəʊzd/  
protective *adj* /prə'tektɪv/  
quaint *adj* /kweɪnt/  
re-creation *n* /,ri:kri'eɪʃn/  
restore *v* /rɪ'stɔ:(r)/  
retired *adj* /rɪ'taɪəd/  
retro *adj* /'retrəʊ/  
revolves around /rɪ,vɒlvz  
'əraʊnd/  
roles *n pl* /rəʊlz/  
ruled *v* /ru:ld/  
running water *n* /,rʌnɪŋ  
'wɔ:tə(r)/  
sandcastles *n pl* /'sændkɑ:slz/  
scald *v* /skɔ:ld/  
school reunion *n* /,sku:l  
rɪ:'ju:niən/  
schoolmate *n* /'sku:lmeɪt/  
seaside *n* /'si:said/  
self-obsessed *adj* /,self əb'sest/  
sensible *adj* /'sensəbl/  
sensitive *adj* /'sensətɪv/  
sighing *v* /'saɪɪŋ/  
sing-song *n* /'sɪŋ sɒŋ/  
sitting room *n* /'sɪtɪŋ ,ru:m/  
social life *n* /'səʊʃl ,laɪf/  
solely *adv* /'səʊli/  
sound asleep /saʊnd ə'sli:p/  
source *v* /sɔ:s/  
stubborn *adj* /'stʌbən/  
supermarkets *n pl*  
'su:pəma:kɪts/  
supportive *adj* /sə'pɔ:tɪv/

sweet *adj* /swi:t/  
teased *v* /ti:zd/  
techno-geek *n* /'teknəʊ ,gi:k/  
television *n* /'telɪvɪʒn/  
top hat *n* /,tɒp 'hæt/  
treat *n* /tri:t/  
twee *adj* /twi:/  
Victorian *adj* /vɪk'tɔ:riən/  
waistcoat *n* /'weɪskəʊt/  
wasteful *adj* /'weɪstfʊl/  
wide awake /,waɪd ə'weɪk/



## UNIT 10

a sharp tongue /ə ,ʃɑ:p 'tʌŋ/  
acquire *v* /ə'kwəɪə(r)/  
ammunition *n* /,æmjʊ'nɪʃn/  
amusement *n* /ə'mju:zmənt/  
ancestors *n pl* /'ænses-təz/  
assumption *n* /ə'sʌmpʃn/  
atrocities *n pl* /ə'trɒsətɪz/  
bad guys *n pl* /'bæd gaɪz/  
beads *n pl* /bi:dz/  
blankets *n pl* /'blæŋkɪts/  
blizzards *n pl* /'blɪzədz/  
broken *adj* /'brəʊkən/  
buffalo *n* /'bʌfələʊ/  
cancelled *v* /'kænsld/  
cavalry *n* /'kævlri/  
cave *n* /keɪv/  
childminder *n* /'tʃaɪldmaɪndə(r)/  
claim *v* /kleɪm/  
clash *v* /klæʃ/  
complex *adj* /'kɒmpleks/  
conflict *n* /'kɒnflɪkt/  
courageous *adj* /kə'reɪdʒəs/  
cowboys *n pl* /'kaʊbɔɪz/  
crops *n pl* /krɒps/  
culture *n* /'kʌltʃə(r)/  
delay *n* /dɪ'leɪ/  
delayed *v* /dɪ'leɪd/  
disease *n* /dɪ'zi:z/  
dominate *v* /'dɒmɪneɪt/  
drowned *v* /draʊnd/  
dust storms *n pl* /'dʌst stɔ:mz/  
elements *n pl* /'elɪmənts/  
emotions *n pl* /ɪ'məʊʃnz/  
encountered *v* /ɪn'kaʊntəd/  
ensued *v* /ɪn'sju:d/  
established *adj* /ɪ'stæblɪʃt/  
exploit *v* /ɪk'splɔɪt/  
extinct *adj* /ɪk'stɪŋkt/  
face the fact /,feɪs ðə 'fækt/  
financial compensation *n*  
'fə'nænsɪl ,kɒmpen'seɪʃn/  
finding my feet /,faɪndɪŋ maɪ 'fi:t/  
flared *v* /fleəd/  
flocked *v* /flɒkt/  
foible *n* /'fɔɪbl/  
glue *n* /ɡlu:/  
goes to their head /,ɡəʊz tə ðeə  
'hed/  
good guys *n pl* /'ɡʊd gaɪz/  
guns *n pl* /ɡʌnz/  
happy ending *n* /,hæpi 'endɪŋ/  
hazardous *adj* /'hæzədəs/  
heart-to-heart *n* /,ha:t tə 'ha:t/

herd *n* /hɜ:d/  
homelands *n pl* /'həʊmlændz/  
hostilities *n pl* /hɒ'stɪlɪtɪz/  
hunter *adj* /'hʌntə(r)/  
impassable *adj* /ɪm'pɑ:səbl/  
impossible *adj* /ɪm'pɒsəbl/  
Indians *n pl* /'ɪndiənz/  
industries *n pl* /'ɪndəstrɪz/  
inhabitants *n pl* /ɪn'hæbɪtənts/  
integrated *v* /'ɪntɪɡreɪtɪd/  
intelligence *n* /ɪn'telɪdʒəns/  
journalist *n* /'dʒɜ:nlɪst/  
livestock *n* /'lɪvstɒk/  
manual skills *n* /,mænjuəl 'skɪlz/  
migrants *n pl* /'maɪɡrənts/  
migration *n* /maɪ'ɡreɪʃn/  
mirrors *n pl* /'mɪrəz/  
moral *n* /'mɒrəl/  
mosquitos *n pl* /mɒ'ski:təʊz/  
murder *n* /'mɜ:də(r)/  
Native Americans *n pl* /,neɪtv  
'əmerɪkənz/  
nurse *n* /nɜ:s/  
on its last legs /ɒn ɪts ,lɑ:st 'legz/  
overcome *v* /,əʊvə'kʌm/  
pioneers *n pl* /,paɪə'nɪəz/  
plagues *n pl* /'pleɪgz/  
plains *n pl* /'pleɪnz/  
plot *n* /plɒt/  
post office *n* /'pəʊst ,ɒfɪs/  
postman *n* /'pəʊstmən/  
preserved *v* /prɪ'zɜ:vd/  
primitive *adj* /'prɪmətɪv/  
pulling your leg /,pʊlɪŋ jə 'leg/  
putting on a brave face /,pʊtɪŋ ɒn  
ə breɪv 'feɪs/  
railroads *n pl* /'reɪlroʊdz/  
rainforests *n pl* /'reɪnfɒrɪsts/  
rare *adj* /reə(r)/  
region *n* /'ri:dʒən/  
republic *n* /rɪ'pʌblɪk/  
reservations *n pl* /,rezə'veɪʃnz/  
resource *n* /rɪ'sɔ:s/  
road systems *n pl* /'rəʊd  
,sɪstəmz/  
sacred *adj* /'seɪkrɪd/  
savages *n pl* /'sævɪdʒɪz/  
scarce *adj* /skeəs/  
self-inflicted *adj* /,self ɪn'flɪktɪd/  
settlers *n pl* /'setləz/  
shepherd *n* /'ʃepəd/  
slaughtered *v* /'slɔ:təd/  
social structure *n* /'səʊʃl  
,strʌktʃə(r)/  
solve *v* /sɒlv/  
spirit (or broken spirit) *n* /'spɪrɪt/  
split up *v* /splɪt 'ʌp/  
stabbed *v* /stæbd/  
starvation *n* /stɑ:'veɪʃn/  
starving *v* /'stɑ:vɪŋ/  
suffered *v* /'sʌfəd/  
tamed *v* /teɪmd/  
temper *n* /'tempə(r)/  
tensions *n pl* /'tenʃnz/  
trade *n* /treɪd/  
tragedy *n* /'trædʒədi/  
unharmed *adj* /ʌn'hɑ:md/  
vacuum cleaner *n* /'vækjuəm  
,kli:nə(r)/



vast *adj* /vɑ:st/  
 wagons *n pl* /'wæɡənz/  
 western *n* /'westən/  
 wilderness *n* /'wɪldənəs/  
 zoo *n* /zu:/'



## UNIT 11

alignment *n* /ə'laɪnmənt/  
 alimentary tract *n* /,ælməntəri  
 'trækt/  
 annoying *adj* /ə'noɪŋ/  
 architect *n* /'ɑ:kɪtekt/  
 auditory *adj* /'ɔ:dətəri/  
 bacteria *n* /'bæktɪəriə/  
 bank note *n* /'bæŋk nɒt/  
 bay *n* /beɪ/  
 bearer *n* /'beərə(r)/  
 bookcase *n* /'bʊkkeɪs/  
 cable *n* /'keɪbl/  
 calendar *n* /'kælɪndə(r)/  
 catchphrase *n* /'kætʃfreɪz/  
 cent *n* /sent/  
 chew *v* /tʃu:/  
 circulation *n* /,sɜ:kjə'leɪʃn/  
 claim form *n* /'kleɪm fɔ:m/  
 cliff *n* /klɪf/  
 coincidence *n* /kəʊ'ɪnsɪdəns/  
 collapse *v* /kə'leɪps/  
 criteria *n* /kraɪ'tɪəriə/  
 currency *n* /'kʌrənsi/  
 data *n* /'dɑ:tə/  
 data packets *n pl* /'dɑ:tə ,pækɪts/  
 denomination *n* /,dɪ,nəmi'neɪʃn/  
 densely *adv* /'densli/  
 dependence *n* /drɪ'pendəns/  
 devise *v* /drɪ'vaɪz/  
 dishwasher *n* /'dɪʃwɒʃə(r)/  
 doing the rounds *,dʊ:ɪŋ ðə*  
 'raʊndz/  
 dream home *n* /'dri:m həʊm/  
 dream *n* /dri:m/  
 dynamic *adj* /daɪ'næmɪk/  
 earthquake *n* /'z:θkweɪk/  
 earworm *n* /'iəwɜ:m/  
 end point *n* /'end pɔɪnt/  
 excreted *v* /ɪk'skri:tɪd/  
 fall in love *,fɔ:l ɪn 'lʌv*  
 flatpack *adj* /'flætpek/  
 flexible *adj* /'fleksəbl/  
 fluently *adj* /'flu:əntli/  
 follicle mite *n* /'fɒlɪkl ,maɪt/  
 functional *adj* /'fʌŋkʃənəl/  
 genius *n* /'dʒi:niəs/  
 globe *n* /gləʊb/  
 grin *v* /grɪn/  
 groans *n pl* /grəʊnz/  
 hairbands *n pl* /'heəbəndz/  
 harmful *adj* /'hɑ:mfl/  
 harmless *adj* /'hɑ:mles/  
 harmlessly *adv* /'hɑ:mlesli/  
 helpline *n* /'helpleɪn/  
 host *n* /həʊst/  
 hypothetical *adj* /,haɪpə'thetɪkl/  
 in the wake of (something) *,ɪn ðə*  
 'weɪk əv .../

inhabit *v* /ɪn'hæbɪt/  
 instructions *n pl* /ɪn'strʌkʃnz/  
 invade *v* /ɪn'veɪd/  
 leap year *n* /'li:p jɜ:(r)/  
 lifecycle *n* /'laɪf,sɑ:kl/  
 loops *n pl* /lu:ps/  
 mail server *n* /'meɪl ,sɜ:və(r)/  
 meme *n* /mi:m/  
 mindboggling *adj*  
 /'maɪnd,bɒɡlɪŋ/  
 moans *n pl* /məʊnz/  
 monks *n pl* /mɒŋks/  
 multiplies *v* /'mʌltɪplaɪz/  
 munch *v* /mʌntʃ/  
 natural disaster *n* /,nætʃrəl  
 drɪ'zɑ:stə(r)/  
 nightmares *n pl* /'naɪtmɛəz/  
 nuclear attack *n* /'nju:kliə(r)  
 ə,tæk/  
 offline *adj* /,ɒf'laɪn/  
 organisms *n pl* /'ɔ:gənɪzəmz/  
 origin *n* /'ɒrɪdʒɪn/  
 painstakingly *adv* /'peɪnzteɪkɪŋli/  
 parasites *n pl* /'pærəsəɪts/  
 pathways *n pl* /'pɑ:θweɪz/  
 patterns *n pl* /'pætənz/  
 pets *n pl* /pets/  
 populated *v* /'pɒpjuleɪtɪd/  
 printing press *n* /'prɪntɪŋ ,pres/  
 puzzle over *v* /,pʌzl 'əʊvə(r)/  
 redesign *v* /,ri:drɪ'zæn/  
 regret *n* /rɪ'ɡret/  
 resource *n* /rɪ'sɔ:s/  
 retained *v* /rɪ'teɪnd/  
 revolutions *n pl* /,revə'lʊ:ʃnz/  
 robust *adj* /rəʊ'bʌst/  
 satellites *n* /'sætələɪts/  
 scraps *n pl* /skræps/  
 shaking *v* /'feɪkɪŋ/  
 skin cells *n pl* /'skɪn selz/  
 soundscape *n* /'saʊndskɛp/  
 space *n* /speɪs/  
 span *v* /spæn/  
 species *n* /'spi:ʃi:z/  
 square centimeter *n* /,skweə  
 'sentɪmɪtə(r)/  
 strokes *n pl* /strəʊks/  
 superpowers *n pl* /'su:pəpaʊəz/  
 susceptible *adj* /sə'septəbl/  
 symphonies *n pl* /'sɪmfənɪz/  
 tedious *adj* /'ti:diəs/  
 tolerate *v* /'tɒləreɪt/  
 torn *v* /tɔ:n/  
 transcribed *v* /træn'skraɪbd/  
 unresponsive *adj* /,ʌnrɪ'spɒnsɪv/  
 washing machine *n* /'wɒʃɪŋ  
 ,məʃɪn/  
 wonder *v* /'wʌndə(r)/



## UNIT 12

afterlife *n* /'ɑ:ftəlaɪf/  
 anxiety *n* /æŋ'zaɪəti/  
 authority *n* /'ɔ:θərəti/  
 basics *n pl* /'beɪsɪks/  
 batteries *n pl* /'bætərɪz/  
 beautician *n* /'bju:ˈtɪʃn/  
 bits and pieces *,bɪts ən 'pi:si:z*  
 bonus *n* /'bəʊnəs/  
 break the ice *,breɪk ðə 'aɪs*  
 broke *adj* /brəʊk/  
 captain *n* /'kæptɪn/  
 centenary *n* /sen'tɪ:nəri/  
 cerebral abscess *n* /,serəbrəl  
 'æbses/  
 chat *v* /tʃæt/  
 china *n* /'tʃaɪnə/  
 committee *n* /kə'mɪti/  
 convened *v* /kən'vi:nd/  
 cruise *n* /kru:z/  
 degree course *n* /dɪ'ɡri: ,kɔ:s/  
 dress rehearsal *n* /'dres rɪ,hɜ:sl/  
 elderly *adj* /'eldəli/  
 en route *adv* /ən 'ru:t/  
 enough *adj* /ɪ'nʌf/  
 enroll *v* /ɪn'rəʊl/  
 exhilarating *adj* /ɪg'zɪləreɪtɪŋ/  
 follow in (somebody's) footsteps  
 /,fɒləʊ ɪn ... 'fʊtstɛps/  
 follow my nose *,fɒləʊ maɪ 'nəʊz*  
 forced *v* /fɔ:st/  
 frantic *adj* /'fræntɪk/  
 frustrations *n pl* /frʌ'streɪʃnz/  
 getting me down *,getɪŋ mi 'daʊn*  
 guest *n* /gest/  
 healer *n* /'hi:lə(r)/  
 hobbies *n pl* /'hɒbɪz/  
 horrendous *adj* /hɒ'rendəs/  
 I got the bug *,aɪ ,ɡɒt ðə 'bʌg*  
 impolite *adj* /ɪmpə'laɪt/  
 in charge *ɪn 'tʃɑ:dʒ*  
 inefficient *adj* /ɪnɪ'fɪʃnt/  
 it hit me like a ton of bricks *ɪt*  
 'hɪt mi laɪk ə ,tʌn əv 'brɪks/  
 ladybird *v* /'leɪdɪbz:d/  
 late developer *n* /,leɪt  
 drɪ'veləpə(r)/  
 leisure time *n* /'leɪzə taɪm/  
 line *n* /laɪn/  
 lunacy *n* /'lu:nəsi/  
 marriage *n* /'mæɪrɪdʒ/  
 minor *adj* /'maɪnə(r)/  
 mobile phone *n* /,məʊbaɪl 'fəʊn/  
 motorcycle *n* /'məʊtəsɑ:kl/  
 music therapy *n* /,mju:zɪk  
 'θerəpi/  
 national assistance *n* /,næʃnəl  
 ə'sɪstəns/  
 newspaper *n* /'nju:zpeɪpə(r)/  
 old bat *n* /əʊld 'bæt/  
 overpowering *adj* /,əʊvə'paʊəɪŋ/  
 pace *n* /peɪs/  
 patience *n* /'peɪʃns/  
 pavements *n pl* /'peɪvmənts/  
 peace and quiet *,pi:s ən 'kwəɪət*  
 philosophy *n* /fə'lɒsəfi/  
 pint *n* /paɪnt/

poring *v* /'pɔ:ɪŋ/  
 primary school *n* /'praɪməri  
 ,sku:l/  
 prioritize *v* /praɪ'brətaɪz/  
 punctual *adj* /'pʌŋktʃuəl/  
 punctuality *n* /,pʌŋktʃu'æləti/  
 put off *v* /pʊt 'ɒf/  
 quarrels *n pl* /'kwɒrəlz/  
 recharge *v* /,ri:tʃə:dʒ/  
 regard *v* /rɪ'ɡɑ:d/  
 relaxation *n* /,rɪ:læks'eɪʃn/  
 religion *n* /rɪ'lɪdʒən/  
 respect *n* /rɪ'spekt/  
 retired *v* /rɪ'taɪəd/  
 ripen *v* /'raɪpən/  
 ritual *n* /'rɪtʃuəl/  
 rottenly *adv* /'rɒtnli/  
 routine *n* /ru:'ti:n/  
 rude *adj* /ru:d/  
 sailed *v* /seɪld/  
 scandalous *adj* /'skændələs/  
 secondary school *n* /'sekəndri  
 ,sku:l/  
 ship *n* /ʃɪp/  
 smash *v* /smæʃ/  
 snatch *v* /snætʃ/  
 stand on my own two feet *,stænd*  
 ɒn maɪ əʊn tu: 'fi:t/  
 strawberries *n pl* /'strɒ:bɛrɪz/  
 such a pain *,sʌtʃ ə 'peɪn*  
 sufficient *adj* /sə'fɪʃnt/  
 talented *adj* /'tæləntɪd/  
 temptations *n pl* /temp'teɪʃnz/  
 transplant *n* /'trænsplɑ:nt/  
 vet *n* /vet/  
 vital *adj* /vaɪtl/  
 widow *n* /'wɪdəʊ/



# Extra materials



UNIT 2 p17

## SPEAKING AND LISTENING

### Dreams come true

These are the top 15 things that people most wanted to do before they die.

- 1 swim with dolphins
- 2 go scuba diving on the Great Barrier Reef
- 3 go whale-watching
- 4 dive with sharks
- 5 go skydiving
- 6 fly in a hot-air balloon
- 7 fly in a fighter plane
- 8 go on safari
- 9 see the Northern Lights
- 10 visit Machu Picchu
- 11 climb Sydney Harbour Bridge
- 12 escape to a paradise island
- 13 drive a Formula 1 car
- 14 go white-water rafting
- 15 walk the Great Wall of China



Unit 2 p16

## PRACTICE

### Exchanging information

#### Student B

Ask and answer questions with Student A to complete the information about Tony and Maureen Wheeler.

When did the Wheelers found **Lonely Planet**?

In 1973. How many guidebooks have been printed?

120 million. How many ...

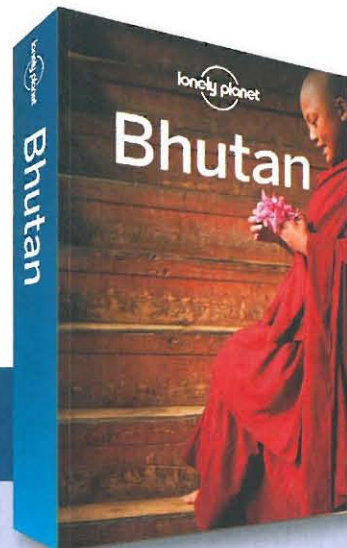


The travel guide company *Lonely Planet* was founded by **Tony and Maureen Wheeler** in 1973. *Lonely Planet* is an outstanding publishing success. ... (How many?) guidebooks have now been printed and it has books for almost every country in the world. They have been translated into **9 languages**. The website [www.lonelyplanet.com](http://www.lonelyplanet.com) receives ... (How many?) visitors per year, and there has been in excess of 10 million downloads of its apps. It has offices in the UK, the US and India with its headquarters in **Melbourne, Australia**.

Tony Wheeler lived in many different countries when he was young because ... (Why?). He studied **engineering** at Warwick University. Maureen was born in ... (Where?). She went to London at the age of 20 because **she wanted to see the world**. She met Tony in Regent's Park ... (When?).

In 1972 they travelled **overland across Europe, through Asia, and onto Australia**. The trip took six months. They wrote their first book, called *Across Asia on the Cheap*, ... (Where?). They have lived in Melbourne on and off **for over thirty years**. Together they have been to ... countries (How many?). Tony says that the most amazing place he has ever visited is a remote hilltop city called Tsaparang, in Tibet.

The Wheelers sold *Lonely Planet* in **2011**, but Tony still writes for the company. His new book, *Dark Lands*, recalls his experiences in countries such as Pakistan and Colombia.





Can you believe it?

## Mystery of man in the snow



People are now questioning Peter Skyllberg's story about getting stuck in the snow. It has emerged that Mr Skyllberg had been living in his car since last May when he disappeared from his home in Kariskoga, central Sweden. His business had collapsed, he had a lot of debts, and his girlfriend had left him. He hadn't spoken to any of his family for over 20 years, so nobody missed him. Local people say that he was only a mile from a main road and snowmobiles frequently pass that way, so it is very strange that his car was not noticed earlier. They can't believe he couldn't get out of his car and get help. Police now believe that Mr Skyllberg actually just wanted to die.

## PRACTICE

### Giving and receiving news

#### Student A

Read the newspaper story. Then show your partner the photo and tell him/her the story in your own words.

## RUSSIA

### DRIVERS STUCK IN 120-MILE TRAFFIC

Tens of thousands of vehicles were stuck – some for three days – in a huge traffic jam on a motorway northwest of Moscow.

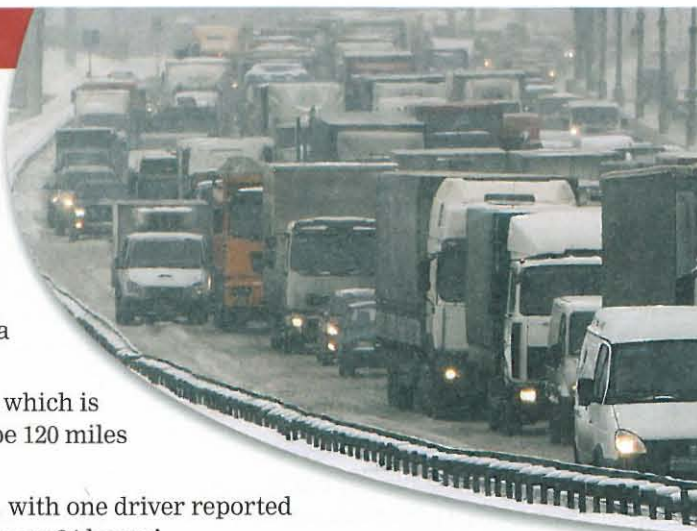
The length of the queue on the M-10 highway, which is one of the busiest in the country, was said to be 120 miles (200km), according to media reports.

Heavy snow has been blamed for the gridlock, with one driver reported as saying he had travelled just 'one kilometre over 24 hours'.

Field kitchens have been set up along the road but many drivers said they were running out of fuel to keep their engines and heating running in the sub-zero temperatures.

'Drivers help one another and that's it, the problems are on the side of the authorities,' a truck driver called Sergei said. 'There are no gasoline tankers, no water, nothing. We are just stuck here.'

A police official said that by Sunday evening 'the reach of the traffic jam is no longer than 55km and is gradually falling'. The motorway is now thought to be moving normally again.





## PRACTICE

### Giving and receiving news

**Student B** Read the newspaper story. Then show your partner the photo and tell him/her the story in your own words.



## Fans queue for new games console

**Nintendo has launched its eagerly anticipated Wii U in the UK. This is the first major home console launch for over six years.**

Close to 300 fans queued outside HMV's Oxford Street store in London, which hosted the official midnight launch following the US release earlier this month, a spokesman for Nintendo said.

'HMV ensured it was well-stocked for the launch following a huge number of pre-orders.'

The Wii U features the GamePad controller, a tablet-type device that allows users to continue playing after the connected television has been turned off. The controller boasts a 6.2in touchscreen display and a three- to five-hour battery life.

The console received mixed reviews in the US, mainly to do with the number of games that are available to justify the £250 cost. Among the games expected to be best-sellers are Nintendo Land, ZombiU, the New Wii Sports, and New Super Mario Bros U.

Four men had been camping outside the store since last Saturday to ensure they would be the first to lay their hands on the console. But the majority of the crowd hadn't joined the queue until Thursday evening. They were entertained by a DJ while they were waiting.

## The Clinging Woman

A man (whose name we never learn) wakes up early one morning to see a woman hanging from her balcony. He calls the police, who come to rescue her. His neighbours treat him as a hero. He thinks he did nothing that was brave and wants to forget the whole episode. Two weeks later the woman comes to his door to thank him. She introduces herself as Lydia Simpson.

They get to know each other and have meals together. One evening he asks her why she tried to kill herself. She replies that she had been engaged to be married, but the man had left her for someone else.

He is attracted to her because she is neat, feminine, and self-reliant. In time they get married. She is the perfect wife and homemaker. They have a close, intense relationship, with very few outside people coming into their lives.

The man is promoted at work. He needs to find a secretary. Lydia proposes herself. He tries to explain that it wouldn't be a good idea for his wife to be his secretary as well, but she takes this as a rebuff of his love. The next day she tries to commit suicide again by gassing herself in the oven. She is rushed to the hospital, where she confesses to him that she had also tried to kill herself when she was 17 because a boy had let her down.



The man is determined to devote the rest of his life to looking after his wife. He refuses to go on a business trip to Canada in order to stay with her. They decide not to have children. Their own company is enough for them. He gets sick and does some work from home with Lydia acting as his secretary. He becomes depressed and even contemplates suicide himself. As he approaches 40, he sees himself trapped.

His company is opening an office in Australia, and he is offered the opportunity of going there for three months. He is worried because this will take him away from home. He tries to put off telling Lydia, but she eventually finds out. She reacts very badly but helps him to prepare for the trip. He knows that she will probably try to kill herself again. He also thinks about suicide as a way out of this suffocating relationship.

He discovers Lydia has taken an overdose of sleeping pills. She is still alive. He is about to call for an ambulance when he makes a big decision. He goes out of the house and doesn't come back until several hours later when he knows his wife will have died.



## Princess Diana FACTS

**Diana, Princess of Wales** (née Diana Spencer) was born in 1961 into an aristocratic English family. In 1981 she married **Charles, Prince of Wales**, son of **Queen Elizabeth II**. They had two sons, **Prince William**, born 1982, and **Prince Harry**, born 1984. The marriage was not a happy one and ended in divorce in 1996. On August 31, 1997, Diana was killed in a car crash in

Paris, along with **Dodi Fayed**, the son of the billionaire Egyptian businessman, **Mohammed Al-Fayed**. Her death was a huge shock, not just in Britain, but round the world. Some people, including Dodi's father, refused to believe it was an accident and many conspiracy theories developed.



## THE APOLLO MOON LANDINGS FACTS

The American **Apollo 11** was the first manned spacecraft to land on the Moon. It was launched on July 16th, 1969 from **Kennedy Space Center**, in Florida. Four days later, on July 20th, astronauts **Neil Armstrong** and **Buzz Aldrin** became the first men to step onto the Moon. Armstrong described the event: 'One small step for man, one giant leap for mankind'. This was heard by people worldwide as the landing was broadcast on live TV. A third astronaut, **Michael Collins**, waited in the rocket to pick them up. They spent eight days in space before returning safely to earth. There were six Apollo landings altogether between 1969 and 1972.



## PRACTICE

### ONE OF THE

### GREATEST MYSTERIES OF

## English history



**R**ichard III was born in 1452. He became King in 1483 after the death of his elder brother, **Edward IV**, having seized the throne from Edward's two young sons. He imprisoned the boys in the Tower of London, where he allegedly had them murdered. The scandal of the princes in the tower caused **Henry Tudor** to challenge him for the throne. Richard amassed an army of 12,000 men in the Midlands, near the town of **Leicester**. Henry marched towards him with his army of 5,000. They met and fought in the **Battle of Bosworth Field**. This was the last time a king actually fought in battle with his men. Richard, aged just 32, was killed and **Henry Tudor** took the throne as **Henry VII**. He was the father of **Henry VIII** and grandfather of **Elizabeth I**.

According to historical records, Richard's body was taken to **Leicester** and buried without a coffin or shroud in a friary graveyard which was subsequently destroyed in the 16th century. It wasn't until 500 years after his death that a team from **Leicester University** set out to trace the site of Richard's burial. In August 2012 they began excavating in a car park in the city centre and soon discovered the skeleton, which was found in good condition but with its feet missing. It also had a badly curved spine and ten battle-related injuries. It was subjected to months of DNA tests, which linked it to descendants in **Canada**, **Michael** and **Leslie Ibsen**, who are genealogically linked to the King's sister, **Anne of York**. This was final confirmation that the body was indeed **Richard III**. A facial reconstruction of the skull was also made, which looks remarkably like portraits of the King. Richard III was portrayed by **William Shakespeare** as a monstrous, hunchbacked tyrant with a withered arm, who murdered two innocent princes in the Tower of London. However, modern historians argue that the King was the victim of **Henry VII's** propaganda and archaeologists found no evidence of a withered arm.

In 2014 the King was finally given a royal burial and his remains were laid to rest in **Leicester Cathedral**.





# THE END OF THE VIKING AGE

The Vikings reigned supreme in Europe for over 300 years. Indeed, fear of the Vikings played a pivotal role in reshaping that continent, but by 1100 AD Viking power began to weaken. Back in their Scandinavian homeland, the Vikings' descendants had divided into separate kingdoms led by rival kings, which ultimately became Norway, Sweden, and Denmark. Not only in Scandinavia, but throughout Europe, the people had begun to form themselves into powerful kingdoms, and the Norse raiders ran out of easy victims. In England, the victory in 1066 of William the Conqueror, a descendant of Norsemen from Normandy, marked the end of Viking terror.

As their power collapsed, the lifestyles of Viking settlers changed and beliefs disappeared. They became part of new, mixed communities. They intermarried

with the locals and forgot many of their old ways. They were converted to Christianity, and warriors no longer went on raids. However, Viking civilization has never completely disappeared. Many places in northern Europe still have Viking names and Viking ideas, such as the creation of parliaments and the right to free speech. These are still very much a part of many modern societies. And of course Viking stories, myths, and legends continue to be enjoyed worldwide. Unlike Columbus, the Vikings may not have established a permanent presence in North America, but their genes have been spread widely throughout the Western world. Millions of Americans and Europeans carry at least a bit of Viking blood.

## VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

### Word pairs T11.7

- A Are you going to have a holiday this year?
- B I'd love to – but we'll have to wait and see. We're a bit hard up at the moment.
- A We're hoping to go to that farmhouse in the South of France, but it's touch and go whether we will.
- B Why's that?
- A Well, I don't know if I can get the time off work.
- B But I thought they were good about giving you time off.
- A Yeah, they are, by and large, but we're a small firm and we have to cover for each other, so it's always a case of give and take.
- B Yeah, I can see that. At least you got away last year. I'm sick and tired of not being able to go anywhere.
- A You get away now and then, don't you?
- B More 'then' than 'now'. We used to get the odd weekends in the country but since the kids came along it's more difficult. Oh for the peace and quiet of the countryside – uh, but I don't suppose we'd get much peace or quiet, even if we could afford to go, what with three kids and two dogs.

- A Is Chris fed up too?
- B You know Chris. Never complains, just grins and bears it.
- A I tell you what. If we do manage to get that farmhouse, why don't you all join us? It's huge.
- B Oh – that's so kind ... er but I don't know. Wouldn't we be spoiling your holiday? What would Pat think? What if ...
- A Look, no ifs or buts. The offer's there – you can take it or leave it!
- B I can't tell you how much I appreciate it. It would be brilliant, but can I talk to Chris about it first?
- A Of course, of course. I'm sure you'll want to go through all the pros and cons together.
- B I can't think of many cons. It's just too good to be true. Thank you so much.
- A Well, as I said, the offer's there. Let's hope I get the time off work – we'll have a great time together.



## THE PACE OF LIFE

# How well do you use your time?

**Answers to quiz****Mostly a answers**

You're a daydreamer. Did you actually manage to finish the quiz? You have little control over your life. Chaos surrounds you. Perhaps you tell yourself that you are being creative, but the truth is you are frightened of failure so you don't try. Your abilities remain untested and your dreams unfulfilled.

**Mostly b answers**

You represent balance and common sense. Your ability to manage your life is impressive, and you know when to relax. You understand that the best decisions are never made in an atmosphere of pressure. You are able to meet deadlines and look ahead to make sure crises don't happen.

**Mostly c answers**

You live in hope that something or somebody will make everything in life come right for you. 'I'll get round to it,' you tell yourself. What you don't tell yourself is that you alone can manage your life. You are an expert at putting things off till later and finding excuses when you do so. Forget these excuses. The right time is now.

**Mostly d answers**

You are certainly an achiever. Superman or superwoman. You know how to get a job done and you are proud of the way you manage your life. You are obsessive about using every second of the day to best effect and get irritated by people who are not like you and prefer to take life at a slower pace. Learn to relax a little. Remember, stress kills.





# Verb patterns

Verbs + -ing	
adore can't stand don't mind enjoy finish imagine loathe	doing swimming cooking

## Note

We often use the verb *go* + -ing for sports and activities.

*I go swimming every day.*

*I go shopping on weekends.*

Verbs + preposition + -ing	
give up look forward to succeed in think of	doing

Verbs + to + infinitive	
afford agree choose dare decide expect forget help hope learn manage mean need offer plan promise refuse seem want would hate would like would love would prefer	to do to come to cook

## Notes

- Help* and *dare* can be used without *to*.  
*We helped clean up the kitchen.*  
*They didn't dare disagree with him.*
- Have to* for obligation.  
*I have to wear a uniform.*
- Used to* for past habits.  
*I used to smoke, but I quit last year.*

Verbs + sb + to + infinitive		
advise allow ask beg encourage expect force help invite need order persuade remind tell want warn would like	me him them someone	to do to go to come

## Note

*Help* can be used without *to*.

*I helped him do the dishes.*

Verbs + sb + infinitive (no to)		
help let make	her us	do

## Notes

- To* is used with *make* in the passive.  
*We were made to work hard.*
- Let* cannot be used in the passive. *Allowed to* is used instead.  
*She was allowed to leave.*

Verbs + -ing or to + infinitive (with little or no change in meaning)	
begin continue hate like love prefer start	doing to do

Verbs + -ing or to + infinitive (with a change in meaning)	
remember stop try	doing to do

## Notes

- I remember posting the letter.*  
(= I have a memory now of a past action; posting the letter.)  
*I remembered to post the letter.*  
(= I reminded myself to post the letter. I didn't forget.)
- I stopped drinking coffee.*  
(= I gave up the habit.)  
*I stopped to drink a coffee.*  
(= I stopped doing something else in order to have a cup of coffee.)
- I tried to sleep.*  
(= I wanted to sleep, but it was difficult.)  
*I tried counting sheep and drinking a glass of warm milk.*  
(= These were possible ways of getting to sleep.)



# Irregular verbs

Base form	Past Simple	Past participle	Base form	Past Simple	Past participle
be	was/were	been	leave	left	left
beat	beat	beaten	lend	lent	lent
become	became	become	let	let	let
begin	began	begun	lie	lay	lain
bend	bent	bent	light	lighted/lit	lighted/lit
bite	bit	bitten	lose	lost	lost
blow	blew	blown	make	made	made
break	broke	broken	mean	meant	meant
bring	brought	brought	meet	met	met
build	built	built	must	had to	had to
buy	bought	bought	pay	paid	paid
can	could	been able	put	put	put
catch	caught	caught	read /ri:d/	read /red/	read /red/
choose	chose	chosen	ride	rode	ridden
come	came	come	ring	rang	rung
cost	cost	cost	rise	rose	risen
cut	cut	cut	run	ran	run
dig	dug	dug	say	said	said
do	did	done	see	saw	seen
draw	drew	drawn	sell	sold	sold
dream	dreamed/dreamt	dreamed/dreamt	send	sent	sent
drink	drank	drunk	set	set	set
drive	drove	driven	shake	shook	shaken
eat	ate	eaten	shine	shone	shone
fall	fell	fallen	shoot	shot	shot
feed	fed	fed	show	showed	shown
feel	felt	felt	shut	shut	shut
fight	fought	fought	sing	sang	sung
find	found	found	sink	sank	sunk
fit	fit	fit	sit	sat	sat
fly	flew	flown	sleep	slept	slept
forget	forgot	forgotten	slide	slid	slid
forgive	forgave	forgiven	speak	spoke	spoken
freeze	froze	frozen	spend	spent	spent
get	got	got	spoil	spoiled/spoilt	spoiled/spoilt
give	gave	given	spread	spread	spread
go	went	been/gone	stand	stood	stood
grow	grew	grown	steal	stole	stolen
hang	hanged/hung	hanged/hung	stick	stuck	stuck
have	had	had	swim	swam	swum
hear	heard	heard	take	took	taken
hide	hid	hidden	teach	taught	taught
hit	hit	hit	tear	tore	torn
hold	held	held	tell	told	told
hurt	hurt	hurt	think	thought	thought
keep	kept	kept	throw	threw	thrown
kneel	knelt	knelt	understand	understood	understood
know	knew	known	wake	woke	woken
lay	laid	laid	wear	wore	worn
lead	led	led	win	won	won
learn	learned/learnt	learned/learnt	write	wrote	written

# Phonetic symbols

Consonants			
1	/p/	as in	pen /pen/
2	/b/	as in	big /bɪg/
3	/t/	as in	tea /ti:/
4	/d/	as in	do /du:/
5	/k/	as in	cat /kæt/
6	/g/	as in	go /gəʊ/
7	/f/	as in	four /fɔ:/
8	/v/	as in	very /'veri/
9	/s/	as in	son /sʌn/
10	/z/	as in	zoo /zu:/
11	/l/	as in	live /lɪv/
12	/m/	as in	my /maɪ/
13	/n/	as in	near /nɪə/
14	/h/	as in	happy /'hæpi/
15	/r/	as in	red /red/
16	/j/	as in	yes /jes/
17	/w/	as in	want /wɒnt/
18	/θ/	as in	thanks /θæŋks/
19	/ð/	as in	the /ðə/
20	/ʃ/	as in	she /ʃi:/
21	/ʒ/	as in	television /'telɪvɪʒn/
22	/tʃ/	as in	child /tʃaɪld/
23	/dʒ/	as in	German /'dʒɜ:mən/
24	/ŋ/	as in	English /'ɪŋɡlɪʃ/

Vowels			
25	/i:/	as in	see /si:/
26	/ɪ/	as in	his /hɪz/
27	/ɪ/	as in	twenty /'twenti/
28	/e/	as in	ten /ten/
29	/æ/	as in	stamp /stæmp/
30	/ɑ:/	as in	father /'fɑ:ðə/
31	/ɒ/	as in	hot /hɒt/
32	/ɔ:/	as in	morning /'mɔ:ɪnɪŋ/
33	/ʊ/	as in	football /'fʊtbɔ:l/
34	/u:/	as in	you /ju:/
35	/ʌ/	as in	sun /sʌn/
36	/ɜ:/	as in	learn /lɜ:n/
37	/ə/	as in	letter /'letə/

Diphthongs (two vowels together)			
38	/eɪ/	as in	name /neɪm/
39	/əʊ/	as in	no /nəʊ/
40	/aɪ/	as in	my /maɪ/
41	/aʊ/	as in	how /haʊ/
42	/ɔɪ/	as in	boy /bɔɪ/
43	/ɪə/	as in	hear /hɪə/
44	/eə/	as in	where /weə/
45	/ʊə/	as in	tour /tʊə/



Great Clarendon Street, Oxford, OX2 6DP,  
United Kingdom

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide. Oxford is a registered trade mark of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2014

The moral rights of the author have been asserted

First published in 2014

2018 2017 2016 2015 2014

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

## No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law, by licence or under terms agreed with the appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this work in any other form and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

Links to third party websites are provided by Oxford in good faith and for information only. Oxford disclaims any responsibility for the materials contained in any third party website referenced in this work

ISBN: 978 0 19 477182 5 Students Book  
ISBN: 978 0 19 477183 2 iTutor  
ISBN: 978 0 19 477181 8 Pack

Printed in China

This book is printed on paper from certified and well-managed sources.

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Special thanks go to Amanda Maris for her contribution to the writing of the material.

The authors and publisher are grateful to those who have given permission to reproduce the following extracts and adaptations of copyright material: pp.10–11 Adapted extract from "Little boy lost finds his mother using Google Earth" by Robin Banerji, BBC World Service, 14 April 2012. Reproduced by permission of BBC Global News Limited; pp.18&19 Adapted extract from "A planet poisoned by plastic" by Simon Reeve, The Daily Mail, 17 May 2010. Reproduced by permission of Solo Syndication; pp.26&27 Extract from "The Clinging Woman" by Ruth Rendell from *Collected Stories* published by Hutchinson. Reprinted by permission of The Random House Group Limited and from *The Fallen Curtain and Other Stories* (© Ruth Rendell, 1980) printed by permission of United Agents (www.unitedagents.co.uk) on behalf of Ruth Rendell; p.33 Adapted extract from *Confessions: Deep, Dark Secrets from a New Generation of Sinners as heard on Radio 2's Drivetime* by Simon Mayo. Published by Bantam Press. Reprinted by permission of The Random House Group Limited; p.43 Adapted extract from "The kids are all right" by Judith Woods, Jo Upcraft and Fiona Holloway, YOU Magazine, December 2008. Reproduced by permission of Solo Syndication; pp.58&59 Adapted extract from "Generation who refuse to grow up" by Marianne Power, The Daily Mail, 20 July 2012. Reproduced by permission of Solo Syndication; pp.66&67 Adapted extract from "Tarzan of Central Park" by Alexander Chancellor, The Independent, 8 October 1986. Reproduced by permission of The Independent; pp.74&75 Adapted extract from "Living in the past: Man spends six years turning cottage into Victorian time capsule", The Daily Mail online, 22 September 2010. Reproduced by permission of Solo Syndication; pp.74&75 Adapted extract from "Time Warp Wives: Meet the women who really do live in the past" by Diana Appleyard, The Daily Mail online, 8 August 2008. Reproduced by permission of Solo Syndication; pp.84&85 Extract from "Jim Who Ran Away from His Nurse and Was Eaten by a Lion" from *Cautionary Tales for Children* by Hilaire Belloc reprinted by permission of Peters Fraser & Dunlop (www.petersfraserdunlop.com) on behalf of the Estate of Hilaire Belloc; p.90 Adapted extract from "Some of life's mysteries explained: Ten questions you never knew

you wanted answered" by Cahal Milmo and Amol Rajan, The Independent, 2 November 2005. Reproduced by permission of The Independent; p.91 Adapted extract from "Earworms: Why songs get stuck in our heads" by Rithu Chatterjee, from BBC News at www.bbc.co.uk/news, 6 March 2012. Reproduced by permission of BBC News; p.91 Adapted extract from "Leap Year", www.timeanddate.com. Reproduced by permission; pp.98&99 Adapted extract from "Paradise or prison?" by Victoria Moore, The Daily Mail, 14 July 2010. Reproduced by permission of Solo Syndication; p.161 Adapted extract from "Russia: Drivers Stuck In 120-Mile Traffic Jam", Sky News, 4 December 2012. Reproduced by permission of Sky News; p.162 Extract from "Game fans queue for Wii U console", orange.co.uk. Reproduced by permission of Orange Digital.

Art editing by: Suzanne Williams/Pictureresearch.co.uk

Location and studio art director: Helen Reilly/Arnos Design Ltd

Illustrations by: Galia Bernstein/nb Illustration pp.84–85; Gill Button pp.8, 22, 23, 29, 33, 44, 60, 61, 76, 85 (hand and items), 86 (Bridget Smith), 93, 96; Andrew Bock/Beehive Illustration pp.10, 26–27, 117, 162; Tom Croft pp.13, 30, 31, 45 (men), 86 (student & mothers), 87; Ollie Cuthbertson/The Bright Agency p.14; Mark Duffin pp.12 (life), 79 (joke car park sign); Melvyn Evans p.97; Martina Farrow p.78 (roses); Rudolph Farkas/Beehive Illustration pp.82, 83, 164; Dylan Gibson p.64; Nazario Graziano/colagene.com p.9 (man and suitcase); David Oakley p.77 (magazine covers); Martin Sanders pp.7, 11, 15, 17, 19, 79 (map), 98; Eva Tacheva/Eye Candy Illustration pp.40, 48, 92, 97; Jim Tsinganos/Debutart pp.81, 94–95, 165

Commissioned photography: Gareth Boden pp.6 (Tyler and Dave), 26–27 (radio and room), 32, 58–59 (four people with slogans), 71, 77, 110 (market researcher)

With many thanks to the following location and prop suppliers:

www.citysightseeingoxford.com (bus); Corbetts of Chipping Norton (digital radio) p.26; Ruth Crofton-Briggs (house) p.70.

We would also like to thank the following for permission to reproduce the following photographs: Cover images Alamy (students/Blend Images); Corbis (trees and lake/Headway chevron/Stuart Westmorland Photography); Getty Images (trams/Paul Biris), (crowd/Alan Popov), (pins/sunil menon), (grandmother/SelectStock), (clock/Lluis Real); Shutterstock (canoeing/Joe Gough), (garden/Domofon), (skydiving/beerkoef). Inside images Alamy pp.6 (Buckingham Palace/John Kellerman), 6 (Chalk Farm/david pearson), 7 (school/Jake Lyell), 18–19 (waste on beach/Tommy Trenchard), 34 (lunar landing/NASA/© RGB Ventures LLC dba SuperStock), 34 (Moon surface/Luis Argerich/© Stocktrek Images, Inc.), 35 (Lunar Rover/PF(space1)), 35 (footprint/© NG Images), 39 (Mickey/Afio Foto Agency), 41 (Darrell/Wavebreakmedia Ltd PH14/Wavebreak Media Ltd), 42 (guitar/music Alan King), 47 (scooter/John angerson), 50 (cup/Erkan Mehmet), 55 (teenagers talking/© Picture Partners), 56 (Rich/love images/Fitness), 57 (Pratima/Rohit Seth), 57 (beck/Claudia Wiens), 57 (musicians/© Massimo Pizzocaro), 59 (pub background/John Warburton-Lee Photography), 65 (movie star/Blend Images), 72 (Ewing Galloway), 73 (modern classroom/Stockbroker/MBI), 75 (Ford Anglia car/© Tony Lilley), 82–3 (landscape/Zbynek Burival), 88 (couple/Hermien Lam/Catchlight Visual Services), 98 (Welcome sign/Stephen Finn), 99 (puffin/david tipling), 103 (Sao Paulo/© David Davis Photoproductions RF), 104–105 (airport/Greg Balfour Evans), 106 (mountains/© Jon Sparks), 111 (grower/© Simon Rawles), 111 (Fair Trade label/© Darren Matthews), 113 (cafe/© Peter Horree), 114 (girl/Clarke Conde), 115 (little girl/Lan Shaw), 118 (portrait/James Winspear/© VIEW Pictures Ltd), 160 (© Radius Images), 163 (NASA/© RGB Ventures LLC dba SuperStock), 164 (Zbynek Burival); Ardea p.19 (bird/John Cancalosi); Bournemouth Daily Echo p.49 (Ross Harper and Ed Moyle); The Bridgeman Art Library p.28 (Pride and Prejudice/Sir William Beechey (1753–1839), detail from Portrait of Marcia. B. Fox (oil on canvas)/Private Collection); Cartoonstock pp.12 (igloo/Royston Robertson), 20 (psychiatrist/Naf), 36 (motorway/Mike Baldwin); Caters News Agency pp.74 (Peter Saunders), 75 (Peter Saunders playing the piano & having tea); Brandon Chicosky/chicosky.com p.49; Corbis pp.7 (road/© Radius Images), 9 (Rob/© Jack Hollingsworth/40260/Alloy), 9 (Tetyana and Sem/© Philip Lee Harvey/cultura), 9 (Shaun/© Rob Lewine/Tetra Images), 22 (car exterior/© Rolf Hojer/epa/Corbis Wire), 28 (Lucy/© Hein van den Heuvel/Bridge), 37 (diner party/© Radius Images), 45 (woman/Westend61), 49 (Times Square/Jose Fuste Raga/Terra), 62–63 (fireworks/orbisswiss/Demotix), 65 (statuette/© Catherine Karnow/Documentary Value), 66–67 (Central Park/© Cameron Davidson/Ivy), 77 (woman on magazine cover/Fabrice Lerouge/Onoky), 116 (Jim Zuckerman), 161 (© Sergei Ilinitzky/epa/Corbis Wire), 161 (© Rolf Hojer/epa/Corbis Wire); Dream:ON app by YUZA p.92; Getty Images pp.7 (Teresa/David Harry Stewart/Riser), 7 (sunset/Ignacio Palacios/Lonely Planet Images), 9 (Margaret/Juanmonino/E+), 9 (Mairie/Jamie Grill Photography), 9 (Joe/Jill Wachter/Workbook Stock), 11 (Saroo/Richard Williams/The Sydney Morning Herald/Fairfax Media via Getty Images), 15 (Jake with backpack/Jupiterimages/Workbook Stock), 15 (bike/Alexander Fortelny/E+), 15 (Jake/Jupiterimage/Workbook Stock), 16 (Tony and Maureen 1973/Ted Golding/The Sydney Morning Herald/Fairfax Media via Getty Images), 16 (with books/Catherine Tremain/The Sydney Morning Herald/Fairfax Media via Getty Images), 18–19 (plastic bottles tops/FotografiaBasica/E+), 24 (couple/Dave M. Benett), 24 (Grand Canyon/Tim Boyles), 24 (Nick Wallenda inset/Jda Mae Astute/© ABC/Getty Images),

25 (Ruth Rendell/Sion Touhig), 28 (Eddie/Tim Macpherson/Riser), 28 (Greg/Dan Dalton/Photodisc), 29 (Glow Images, Inc), 34 (Princess Diana/Mark Cuthbert/UK Press via Getty Images), 38 (Tony and Marie/Take A Pix Media/Blend Images), 38 (Theo/Paco Romero/Photodisc), 38 (Janine/Colin Hawkins/Photographer's Choice), 39 (Elsie/Mike Harrington/The Image Bank), 41 (Kara/Kristina Lindberg/Riser), 41 (Loukas/Henrik Sorensen/Taxi), 46 (Jamie Oliver sitting/Chris Terry/Contour by Getty Images), 50 (Steve Jobs 1982/Diana Walker/SJ/Contour by Getty Images), 50 (Starbucks Store/Yonatan Pomrenze/NBC NewsWire/NBCUniversal), 51 (Apple Store/View Pictures/UG via Getty Images), 51 (Steve Jobs with iPad/Justin Sullivan), 51 (Howard Schultz/Kevin P. Casey/Bloomberg via Getty Images), 52 (Terry Vine/Blend Images), 53 (uniquely id), 54–55 (men arguing/Digital Vision/Photodisc), 54–55 (women talking/David Burch/UpperCut Images), 55 (women in cafe/Cultura/yellowdog/StockImage), 56 (Isabel/Zero Creatives/Cultura), 57 (William and Kate/Dominic Lipinski/AFP), 57 (Japanese couple/Mike Clarke/AFP), 62 (Susan Boyle/Andrew Yates/AFP), 63 (newspaper/Jeff J Mitchell), 68 (Anna/Anna Bryukhanova/E+), 69 (mullplus/E+), 77 (man on magazine cover/ImagesBazaar), 80 (Matt Gray/MGP/Lifesize), 81 (car sinking/Paul Kennedy/Lonely Planet Images), 88 (house/Martin Hunter), 89 (Justin Lewis/Iconica), 90 (woman/Tara Moore/Stone), 97 (Dan/Andreas Stamm), 97 (Jilly/Les and Dave Jacobs/Cultura), 97 (Frances/Frank P wartenberg/Picture Press), 100 (Blend Images/John Lund/the Agency Collection), 101 (Lola L. Falantes/Flickr), 103 (Fernando/Jacqueline Veissid/Photodisc), 105 (couple complaining/Image Source), 107 (Marilyn Monroe/Alfred Eisenstaedt/Pix Inc./Time & Life Pictures/Getty Images), 108 (Kate/Sophie Invernesse/Photodisc), 109 (summer camp/Stephen Simpson/Taxi), 110 (burgers/Lauri Patterson/E+), 115 (old girl/clu/E+), 118–119 (Glasgow Riverside Museum Of Transport/View Pictures/UG via Getty Images), 119 (exterior Galaxy Soho, Beijing, China/UG via Getty Images), 119 (interior Galaxy Soho, Beijing, China/View Pictures/UG via Getty Images), 160 (Roberto Mettifofo/The Image Bank), 163 (Mark Cuthbert/UK Press via Getty Images); Ted Goff p.53; Copyright Guardian News & Media Ltd 2013/The Guardian/© David Sillitoe p.42 (Sarah Thomas); iStockphoto pp.6 (Tweet bird/sodafish), 28 (Rachel/jeangill), 68 (tram/graf), 70 (Alison/Anna Bryukhanova), 93 (mammamaart), 113 (street/wstock); Image Source p.49 (woman with headphones);

The Kobal Collection/PictureDesk pp.28 (*The Matrix*/Warner Bros), (*Mamma Mia!*/Universal/Playtone), (*The Dark Knight*/Warner Bros/DC Comics), 61 (MGM); John Linton/Lintonpix.com pp.98–99 (*Isle of Muck* landscapes – top and bottom), 99 (the islanders & ferry); Museum of London pp.79 (bread oven), (leather costrel), (seal matrix), (chain mail), (skate), (spectacles); University of Leicester pp.79 (car park), (archaeologists digging), (excavation of skeleton), (skeleton reassembled), (skull); By kind permission of Lonely Planet pp.16 (logo), 17 (book covers), 160 (logo and book cover); © National Portrait Gallery, London pp.78, 163 (detail from a portrait of Richard III by Unknown artist); Nature Picture Library p.19 (seal); By permission of Oxford University Press p.28 (*The Great Gatsby* by F. Scott Fitzgerald, edited by Ruth Prigozy, Oxford World's Classics (2008), ISBN: 978-0-19-953640-5); Press Association Images pp.11 (Fatima/Saurabh Das/AP), 39 (Laura/Dave Thompson/PA Archive), 42 (Nick D'Aloisio's ap/ Matt Dunham/AP), 63 (house/Andrew Milligan/PA Archive), 63 (fans with poster/Jennifer Graylock/AP), 162 (David Parry/PA); Reprinted by permission of The Random House Group Ltd. pp.25 (*The Fallen Curtain and other stories* by Ruth Rendell), 28 (*The Da Vinci Code* by Dan Brown); Bob Redman p.66 (Bob Redman), 67 (Bob Redman); By kind permission of Simon Reeve/www.simonreeve.co.uk p.18; Reuters p.11 (train/Reuters/Jayanta Shaw); Rex Features pp.22 (car interior/IBL), 28 (Skyfall/© Col Pics/Everett), 28 (Les Misérables/Universal/Everett), 35 (*The Sunday Telegraph*, *The Sunday Times*), 35 (*The Express* on Sunday), 42 (Nick D'Aloisio), 42 (Jake Bugg/Danny Payne), 46 (Jamie Oliver teaching/Starttraks Photo), 47 (family/Beretta/Sims/Privat); Scholastic Ltd p.28 (*The Hunger Games*, Copyright © Suzanne Collins, 2008. This Edition published in the UK by Scholastic Ltd, 2011. All rights reserved.); Science Photo Library pp.18 (nurdles/Bud Lehnhausen), 90 (bacteria/Pasieka); Shutterstock pp.15 (rice terraces/John Bill), 21 (absolut), 37 (flowers/el lobo), 41 (NEETS/Andrew Burmakin), 42 (hands artwork/Athanasia Nomikou) & (wheelchair artwork/Leremy), 54 (street scene/anshar), 58 (daughter/wavebreakmedia), 59 (father/Sarah Cheriton-Jones), 59 (daughter/wavebreakmedia), 62 (glitter/Deyan Georgiev), 66 (tree/debra millet), 68 (Simone/Bevan Goldswain) & (Pyramids/André Klaassen), 75 (wallpaper/clearviewstock), 81 (medicine bottle/elnavagante), 82 (Kjetil Kolbjørnsrud), 83 (wood background/Vladyslav Danilin), 84 (Ron Dale), 90 (internet/satchi), 91 (clock/Rudy Bagozzi), (woman/Yeko Photo Studio) & (@ symbol/dencg), 97 (Abi/anna karwowska), (Nat and Louis/Blend Images) & (Derek/Jorg Hackemann), 106 (snow/Vitaly Korovin), 160 (Ammitt Jack); Solo Syndication pp.74, 75 (Joanne Massey/Grant Triplow/Daily Mail); Superstock p.73 (old classroom/Ft Online); SWNS/South West News Service Ltd p.24 (police search); Sony Music Entertainment UK Ltd. p.63 (album by Susan Boyle I Dreamed a Dream); Topfoto p.78 (Battle of Bosworth/J. Balean); Courtesy of WaterAid.org p.15 (logo)

Although every effort has been made to trace and contact copyright holders before publication, this has not been possible in some cases. We apologise for any apparent infringement of copyright and, if notified, the publisher will be pleased to rectify any errors or omissions at the earliest possible opportunity.



What do you get with New  
Headway Upper-Intermediate  
Fourth edition?



#### For students

- Student's Book with iTutor DVD-ROM
- Workbook with iChecker CD-ROM with/without key
- Student's website for extra practice and games at: [www.oup.com/elt/headway](http://www.oup.com/elt/headway)

#### For teachers

- Teacher's Book with Teacher's Resource Disc
- Class Audio CDs
- iTools for your digital classroom
- Teacher's website for resources and ideas at: [elt.oup.com/teachers/headway](http://elt.oup.com/teachers/headway)



**OXFORD**  
UNIVERSITY PRESS

[www.oup.com/elt](http://www.oup.com/elt)

# New Headway

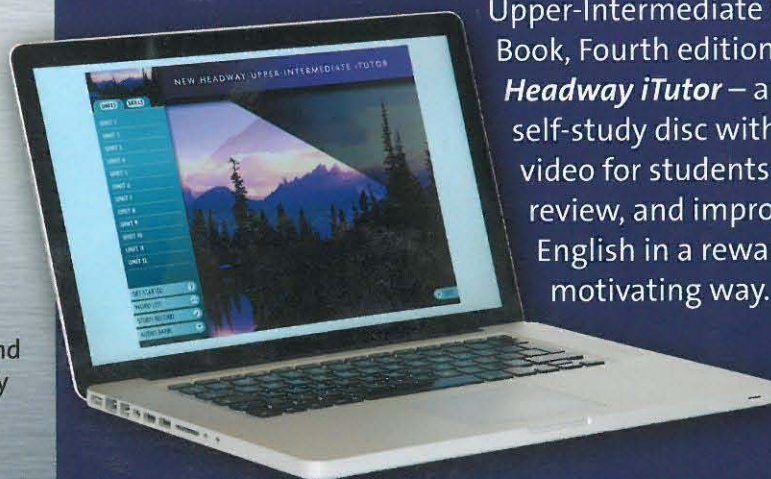
*The world's most trusted English course*

A perfectly-balanced syllabus with extensive resources at all levels for students and teachers

- In-depth treatment of grammar
- Integrated skills throughout
- Full support in print, on disc, and online

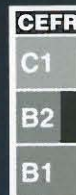
## Headway Upper-Intermediate, Fourth edition

Stretches students towards a more complex and natural use of English.



Upper-Intermediate Student's Book, Fourth edition, features the *Headway iTutor* – an interactive self-study disc with documentary video for students to revise, review, and improve their English in a rewarding and motivating way.

*Headway and its award-winning authors, John and Liz Soars, are names that have become synonymous with English language teaching and learning. The Headway course is renowned worldwide for its clear understanding of teacher and learner needs.*



ISBN 978-0-19-477181-8

